



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Edue T 21918.38.270



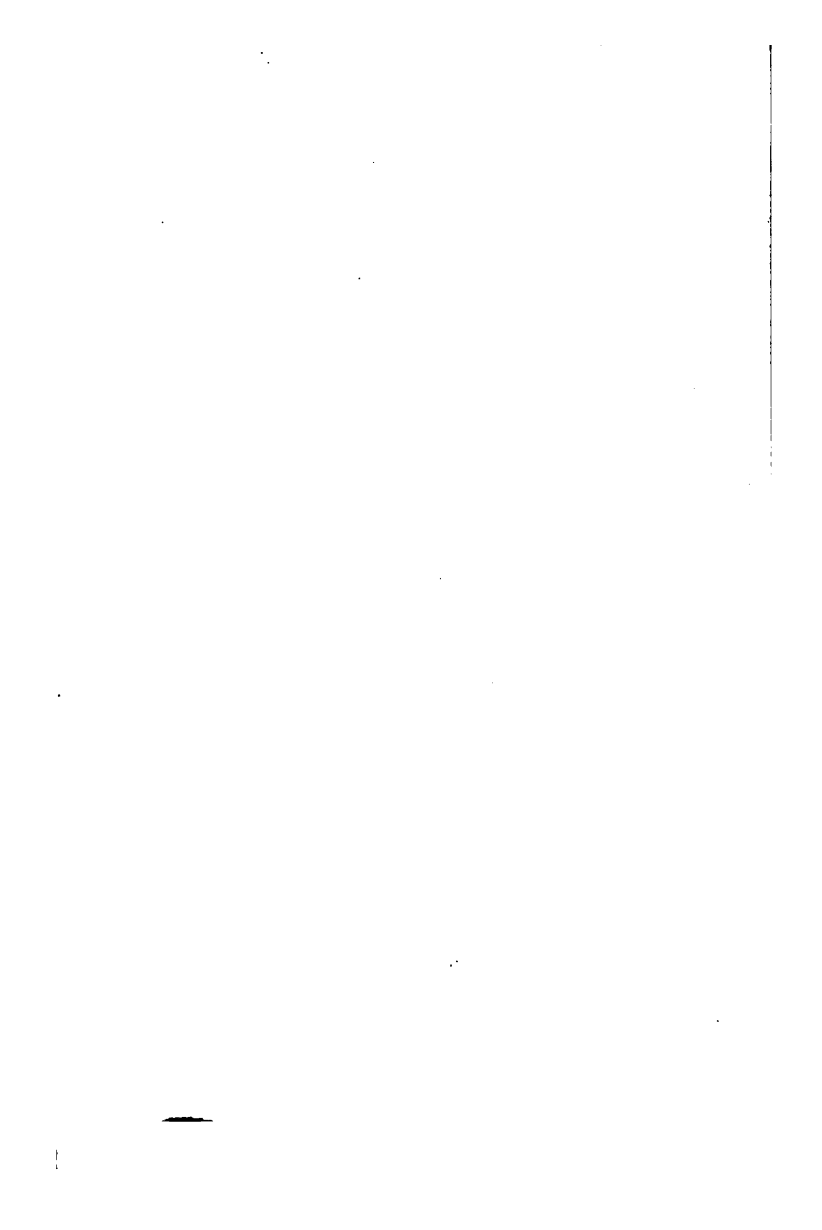
THE BEQUEST OF
HENRY WARE WALES, M. D.,
OF BOSTON.
(Class of 1838.)

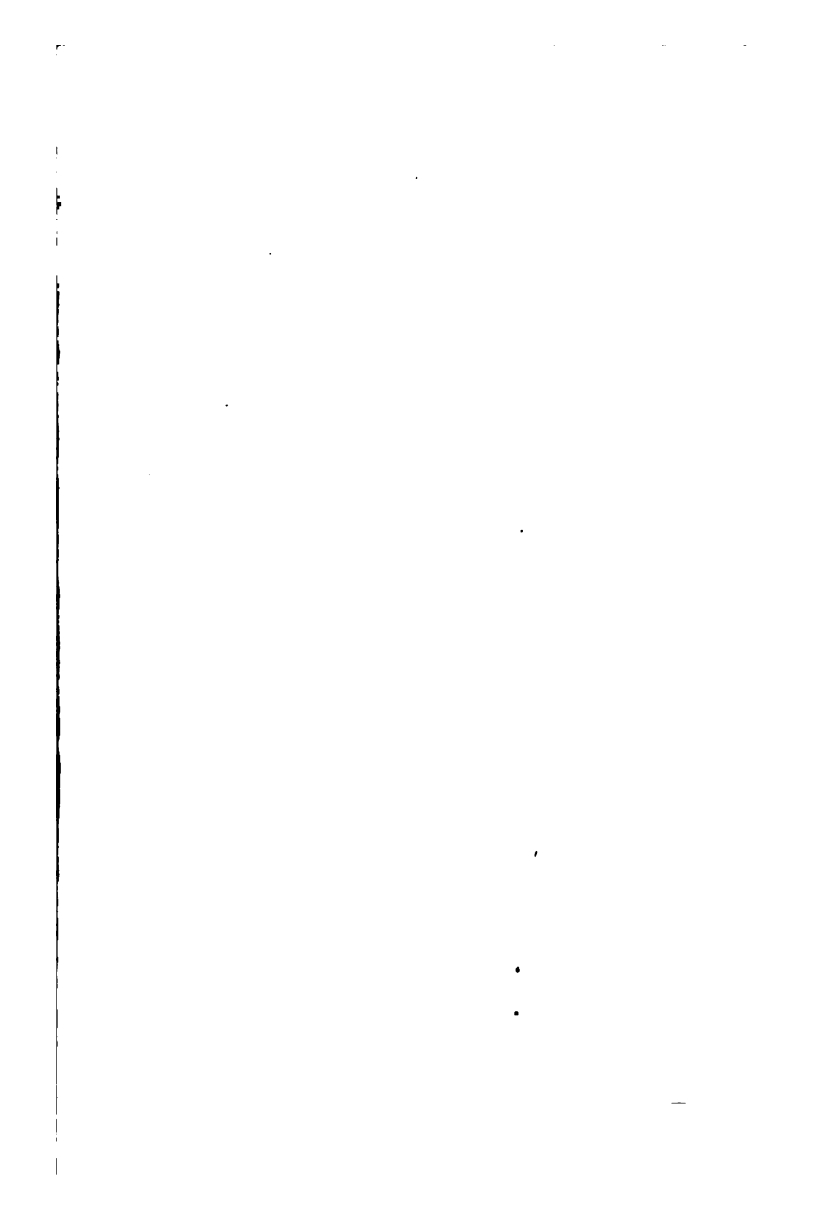
Received

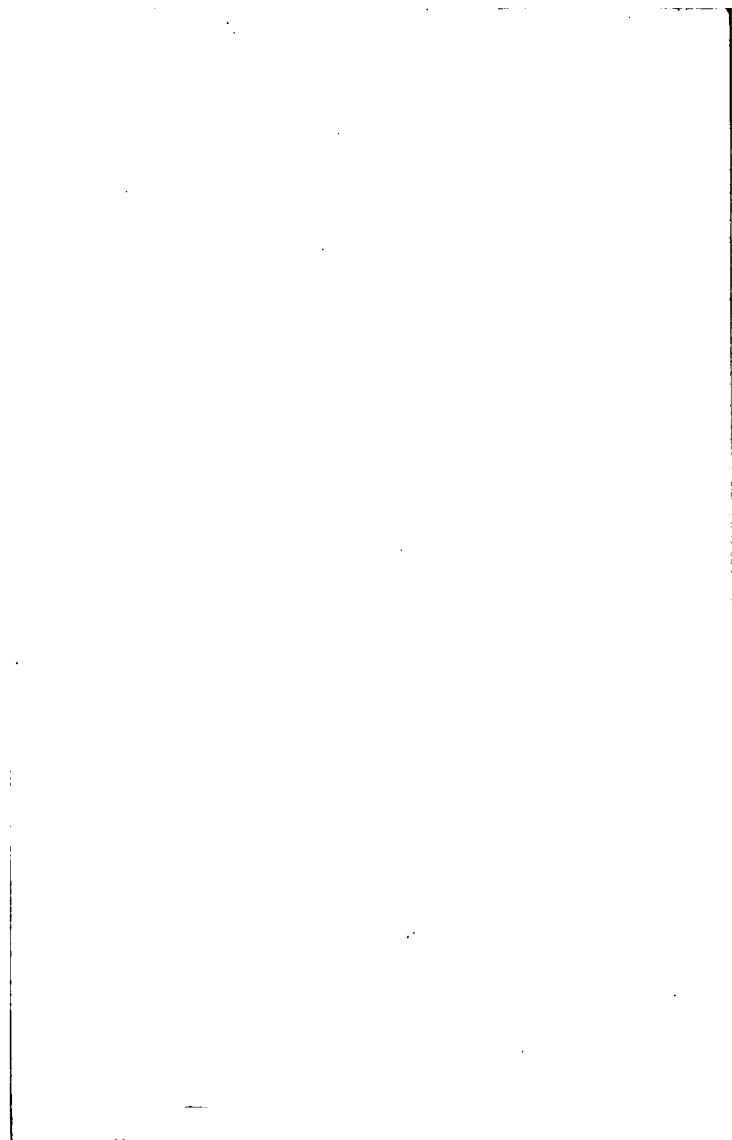
18

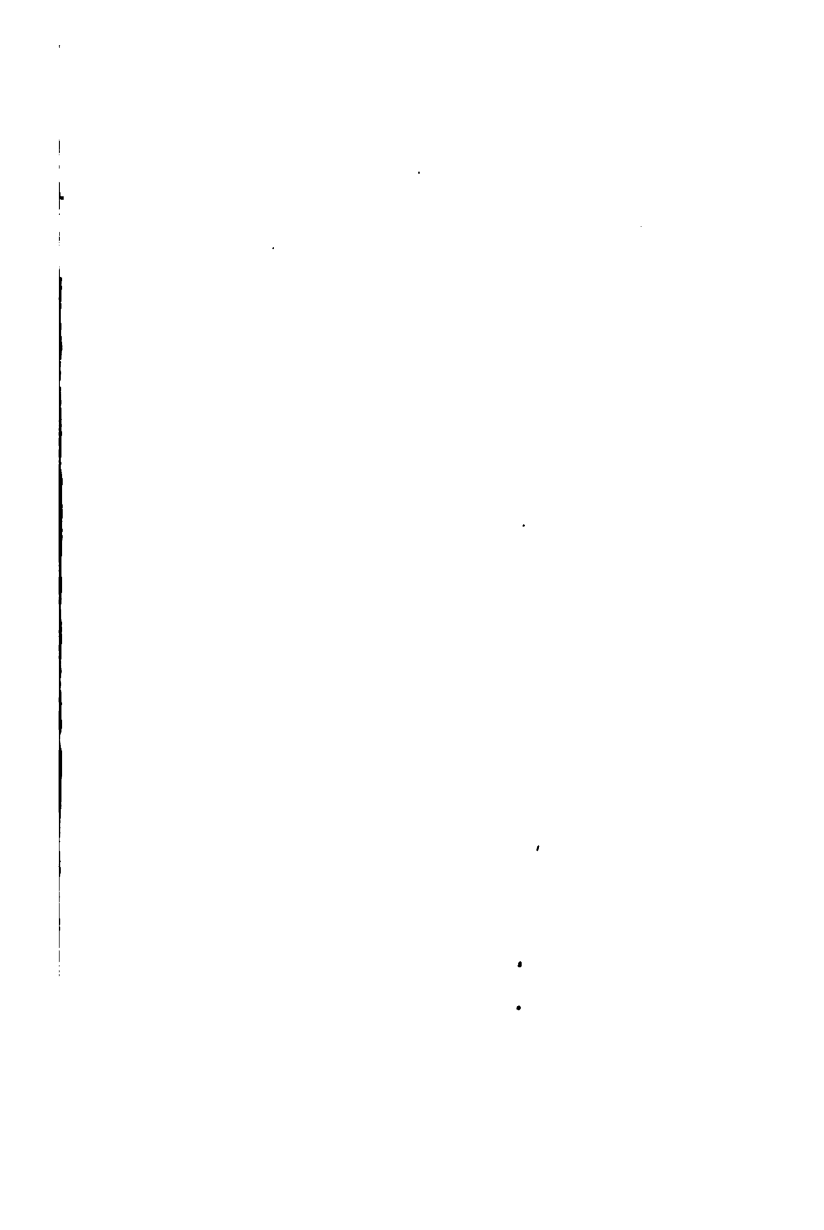


3 2044 102 788 080









2

A
GRAMMAR
OF THE
ITALIAN LANGUAGE

BY
FERDINAND CICILONI

FLORENCE
PUBLISHED BY RICORDI AND C^o.

—
1838

Educ T 21918.38.270

~~Educ T 1368.38~~

~~72.5.59~~

1856, Oct. 22,

Males Request.

62½ cts paid for binding by

G. H. H. mother of J. H. H. H. H.

A LADY MOORE.

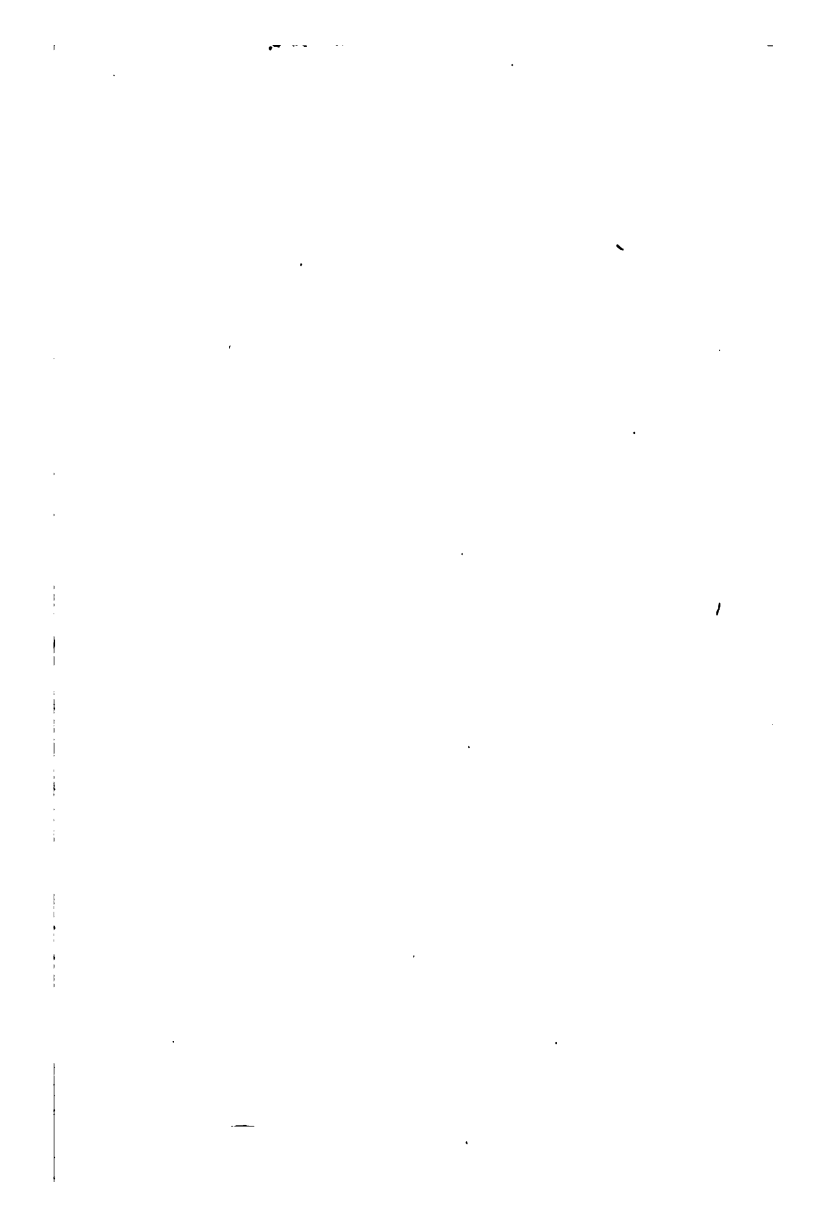
Signora,

Gli elementi di una favella in cui Ella è sì provetta, e che in questo libro s'insegna, deggiono presentarsi a chi può pienamente giudicarne.

Non osa lusingarsi l'autore che sieno stati questi medesimi che l'hanno spinta a tant'altezza nella più armoniosa fra le lingue viventi, la quale ottiene nuove grazie dalle sue labbra. Non ne' precetti di una grammatica qualunque, ma nella elevatezza del di lei ingegno ei ravvisa l'origine di tali avanzamenti.

Siccome il di lei giudizio contribuì a farlo ardito di comparire in pubblico, così ora gli dà coraggio di offerirle un tributo, il quale gli porge l'opportunità di testificare la sua ammirazione ai di lei talenti, il suo rispetto al di lei carattere, e la sua obbligazione alla di lei bontà: le quali cose lo rendono

*Umiliss. Servo divotissimo,
F. CICILONI.*



P R E F A C E

Although the cultivation of the modern language of Italy has given birth to several Italian grammars in this country, an improved work to teach its elements has still been left an acknowledged desideratum. No one has yet appeared sufficiently satisfactory to have established itself in any decided pre-eminence of reputation, as is manifest by that under the spurious name of *Veneroni* being still in use, in spite of its voluminousness and egregious defects, which have been repeatedly reprobated: a compilation so heterogeneous, confused, and void, is indeed hardly to be paralleled; still that compilation, which has made many abandon the study of Italian in despair, continues to encumber this path of literature, after all the labours performed by others to remove the obstruction.

One of the most concise and correct of the works published for the purpose is, the «*Practical Rules*» of *Tourner*; which however are too often wanting in clearness, and lose half their value by the absence of exemplifications; as these, instead of being annexed to the rules, are placed together in a mass, at the end, without a reference.

A more recent one, the Grammar of *Galighani*, also possesses much merit, but lies under objection for having collected the superfluous along with the useful; and, what is worse, for teaching frequently the Florentine dialect in place of the Italian language.

Other publications of the kind have their respective merits and imperfections, which it is not incumbent to discuss.

The pretensions of the present are, to comprise, in small compass, more of what is essential and useful towards a knowledge of Italian, exposed with greater perspicuity and precision, than has been done in any former.

Even Corticelli's and Soave's, the standard grammars of Italy, will be found in several respects less complete and exact.

Were any specification of points of difference desired, it might be said, that in this grammar a more extensive and systematic view is taken of a prominent feature of the language, Augmentatives and Diminutives; that it contains a fuller explication of Pronouns, in which consists much of the difficulty of every language, and in which the Italian is redundant; and that the numerous Irregular Verbs

are more distinctly arranged in copious tables of reference, as well as reduced to a more compendious classification. It might be noticed too that the curtailings of Italian words at their termination, a practice highly necessary to be clearly developed, but treated summarily in the grammars published in England, and with a confounding intricacy in those of Italy, has its regulations better methodized and detailed in this.

Grammatical definitions will doubtless be unnecessary for many who may use this work; the author has however been led to introduce them, partly in conformity with general usage, partly from having experienced their utility for pupils less conversant with them.

These definitions, it is to be observed, are modelled with a particular view to the Italian language, which requires some difference from the English on this head in what regards the verb.

Some few things having various grammatical affinities are presented under different aspects that they may be familiar to the student in each.

As the peculiar articulation of the letters and syllables of a language is acquired with ease by oral instruction, but with great difficulty, and never

perfectly, by written, none is here attempted for Italian. A speaking preceptor will teach it better in an hour than a volume of silent precepts in a year : and since, besides the numerous Italians in England, English persons innumerable are masters of the enunciation, rules concerning it may be omitted not only as inadequate but superfluous.

A collection of syllables and words combining the most peculiar and difficult combinations of sounds is given to facilitate.

The person engaged in supervising the work in its progress through the press (the author himself being abroad) is induced to prefix these observations under the sanction of a most competent judge, whose examination it has undergone, and whose opinion of it they declare.

As an accompaniment to it, a treatise is in preparation on Italian Prosody, a subject hitherto involved in much obscurity and mistake. The accentuation, or metrical pronunciation of words, a component part of prosody, will be included in that treatise.

ABBREVIATION USED IN THIS WORK

Abl.	Ablative	Mas.	Masculine
Acc.	Accusative	No.	Number
Adj.	Adjective	N.	Nominative
Adv.	Adverb	P.	Person
Conj.	Conjunctive	Pers.	Personal
D. or dat. . . .	Dative	Plu.	Plural
Ex.	Example	Pres.	Present
Fem.	Feminine	Pron.	Pronoun
Imp.	Imperative	Sing.	Singular
Ind.	Indicative	Subj.	Subjunctive
Inf.	Infinitive		

MARKS USED IN THE EXERCISES

—— indicates that the word is alike in Italian and English.

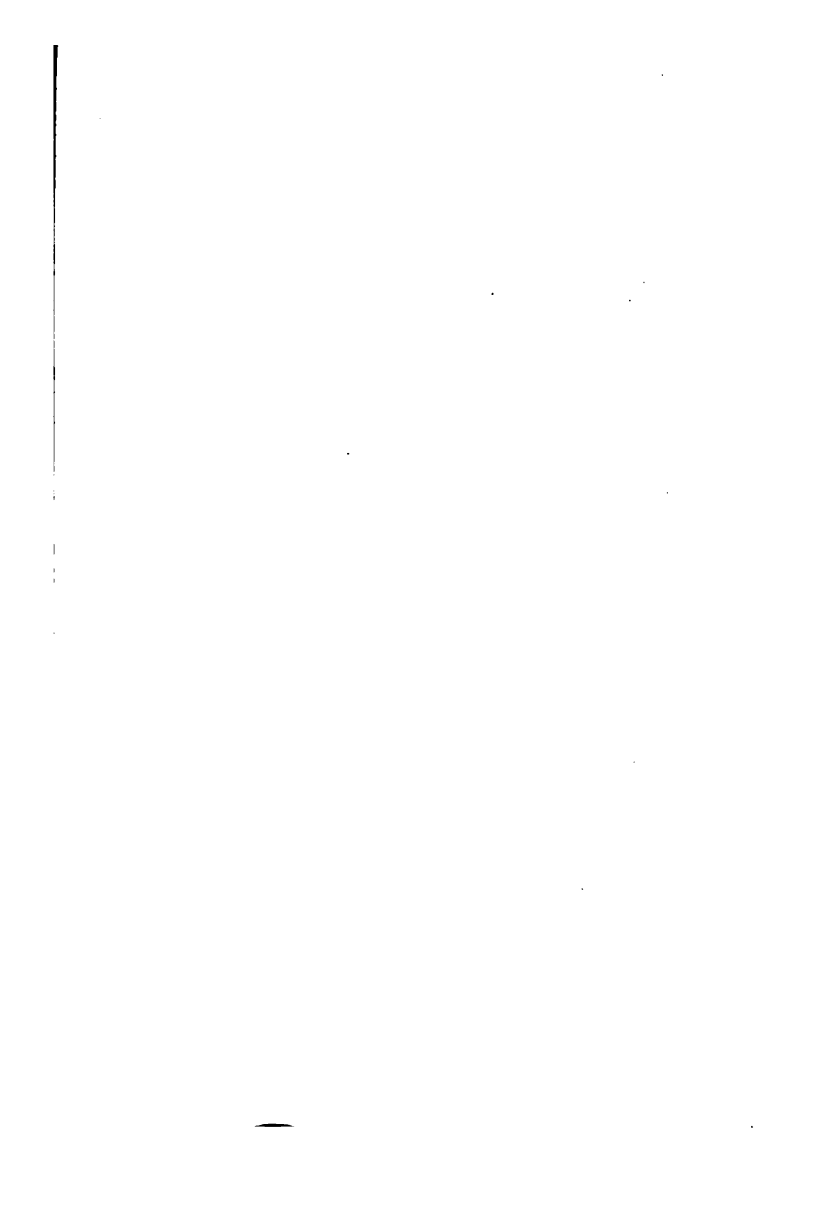
= indicates that the English word under which it is placed is not expressed in Italian.

() English words between parentheses are to be translated by those placed under.

The numbers placed over different words in English show how the words are to be transposed in Italian.

When two words in the same phrase are marked with the same number, they are to be expressed by one word : as,

4 4
I was very much afraid ; *temeva molto*.



GRAMMAR

OF THE

ITALIAN LANGUAGE

LESSON I.

ITALIAN ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION.

A	Ba, be, bi, bo, bu.
B	Ca, ce, ci, co, cu.
C	Da, de, di, do, du.
D	Fa, fe, fi, fo, fu.
E	Ga, ge, gi, go, gu.
F	Ja, je, ji, jo, ju.
G	La, le, li, lo, lu.
H	Ma, me, mi, mo, mu.
I	Na, ne, ni, no, nu.
J	Pa, pe, pi, po, pu.
L	Qua, que, qui, quo.
M	Ra, re, ri, ro, ru.
N	Sa, se, si, so, su.
O	Ta, te, ti, to, tu.
P	Va, ve, vi, vo, vu.
Q	Za, ze, zi, zo, zu.
R	Gna, gne, gni, gno, gnu.
S	Sca, sche, schi, sco, scu.
T	Scia, sce, sci, scio, sciu.

U Gli is pronounced with a liquid sound,
 V except in *negligere*, and its de-
 Z rivatives; in *Anglia*, *Angli*, *Anglicano*, *Glicera*, and a few other words.

Bastone, bene, birra, bocca, bue.

Camera, cena, cheto, chiedere, cibo, compagno, curare.

Dare, debito, dignità, dono, duro.

Fame, ferire, fine, fosso, fuso.

Gastigo, genere, gherminella, giro, ghiro, gondola, gusto.

Jattanza, jeri, jonico, jugero.

Madre, meridionale, misto, morigerato, muro.

Nave, Nestore, nibbio, nome, nume.

Lavare, lena, lino, logorare, luglio.

Padre, pera, piselli, ponte, puro.

Quadro, quercia, quindici, quotidiano.

Rabbia, remo, riso, rodere, rustico.

Santo, senno, seno, simulare, sono, sonno, suddito:

Tarlo, tenere, timone, togliere, tuffare.

Vanagloria, vena, virtù, volontà, vulcano.

Zattera, zelo, zingaro, zolfo, zucchero.

Gladiatore, gleba, gliele, figlio, globo, glutinoso, figlia, gnaffe, guadagnare, compagna, campagna, giugnere, ignudo, ignorante, negligente, negletto, negligere, negligenza, Angli.

Sciame, scimunito, scena, sciorinare, sciuga-

tojo, scavare, scherno, schizzare, scozzonare, scusare.

Nella città di Sorrento venne alla luce Torquato Tasso il dì undici di marzo del mille cinquecento quaranta quattro. Il padre di lui, Bernardo, erasi là trasferito per vivere a sè stesso, alla sua famiglia ed a' suoi studj, dopo che ad esso ne fu fatta liberal concessione da Ferrante Sanseverino, Principe di Salerno, a servizj di cui in qualità di primo segretario era stato chiamato, fin dall'anno mille cinquecento trent' uno. La madre di Torquato fu Porzia de' Rossi, nobile famiglia originaria di Pistoja, che in Napoli trapiantata fu grandemente favorita dalla fortuna. Gli avversi casi, nei quali Bernardo Tasso trovossi avvolto, quasi per tutto il corso della sua vita, il costrinsero a procacciarsi un decente stabilimento fuori di Bergamo, ove la nobile, e in alcuni tempi potente assai, famiglia de' Tassi fissata aveva nel secolo decimo quarto la sua dimora.

LESSON II.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The Parts of Speech are distributed into nine in Italian, as in English, viz.: — 1. The Substantive, or Noun. 2. The Article. 3. The Adjective. 4. The Pronoun. 5. The Verb. 6. The Adverb. 7. The Preposition. 8. The Conjunction. 9. The Interjection.

But the inflexions, or changes of termination, and other variations in the several parts, which are very small in the English language, are considerable in the Italian.

A SUBSTANTIVE, or NOUN, is the name of any thing.

Substantives are divided into two sorts; proper and common names. The former are the names of persons and places: such as *Guglielmo*, William; *Inghilterra*, England. The latter are the names of kinds, or species of things: as, *animale*, animal; *uomo*, man.

GENDERS.

Every noun in Italian is of the masculine or feminine gender.

1. All names of Men, as well as nouns expressing their dignities or callings, are of the masculine gender, whatever their termination may be: as, *Andrea*, Andrew; *Tommaso*, Thomas; *imperatore*, emperor; *poeta*, poet.

2. All names of Women, and nouns of dignities or professions applied to them, are of the feminine gender, whatever the final vowel may be: as *Erato*, a muse of that name; *madre*, mother; *regina*, queen; *cameriera*, servant-maid.

3. With regard to other nouns, the vowel in which they terminate commonly determines their genders.

Nouns ending in *a* are of the feminine gender: as, *tavola*, table. Except some derived from the Greek: as,

Anagramma,	<i>anagram.</i>	pianeta,	<i>planet.</i>
anatema,	<i>anathema.</i>	poema,	<i>poem.</i>
apotegma,	<i>apothegm.</i>	prisma,	<i>prism.</i>
assioma,	<i>axiom.</i>	problema,	<i>problem.</i>
clima,	<i>climate.</i>	proclama,	<i>proclamation.</i>
diadema,	<i>diadem.</i>	programma,	<i>prospectus.</i>
dilemma,	<i>dilemma.</i>	scisma,	<i>schism.</i>
diploma,	<i>diploma.</i>	sistema,	<i>system.</i>
dogma,	<i>dogma.</i>	sofisma,	<i>sophism.</i>
emblema,	<i>emblem.</i>	stemma,	<i>coat of arms.</i>
enigma,	<i>enigma.</i>	stratagemma,	<i>stratagem.</i>
epigramma,	<i>epigram.</i>	tema,	<i>theme.</i>
fantasma,	<i>phantom.</i>	teorema,	<i>theorem.</i>
idioma,	<i>idiom.</i>		

Some few nouns vary their genders as they vary their meanings:

Dramma,	{ <i>Drama</i> , is masculine. <i>Dram-weight</i> , is feminine.
Tema,	{ <i>Theme</i> , is masculine. <i>Fear</i> , is feminine.
Dimane,	{ <i>To-morrow</i> , is masculine. <i>Break of day</i> , is feminine.
Margine,	{ <i>Cuticle of a wound</i> , is feminine. <i>Brink, or margin</i> , is masculine.
Oste,	{ <i>Innkeeper</i> , is masculine. <i>Army</i> , is feminine.

The general rules for the gender of nouns ending in *e* are liable to the most exceptions.

4. Nouns in *me* are generally masculine; as, *costume*, custom.

But *fame*, hunger; *speme*, hope, are feminine.

5. Nouns in *re* are generally masculine: as, *dolore*, pain.

The following nouns deviate from this rule, being feminine: *febbre*, fever; *coltre*, coverlet; *polvere*, dust; *scure*, ax; *torre*, tower.

But *arbore*, tree; *aere*, air; *folgore*, thunderbolt; *lepre*, hare; *cenere*, ashes; *carcere*, prison, are of both genders.

6. Nouns ending in *nte* are for the most part masculine: as, *monte*, mountain.

Except *mente*, mind; *corrente*, current; *sorgente*, source; *gente*, people, (feminine): *fronte*, forehead; *fonte*, fountain, (of both genders.)

Fine, end; *trave*, beam, are of both genders: *mille*, thousand, is masculine in the singular, feminine in the plural.

7. Nouns ending in *i* are for the most part feminine: as, *metropoli*, metropolis.

Except *barbagianni*, owl; *brindisi*, toast (in drinking); *Tamigi*, Thames; *di*, day, and its compounds; *eclissi*, eclipse; and numerals ending in *i*: as, *dieci*, ten; *quindici*, fifteen.

Genesi, Genesis, is of both genders.

8. Nouns in *o* are masculine. Except *mano*, hand; *Cartago*, Carthage; *vorago*, gulf; *immagine*, image; *testudo*, tortoise, etc. The four last words (contracted from *Cartagine*, *voragine*, *immagine*, *testudine*) are used only in poetry.

9. Nouns of fruit-trees ending in *o*, (which are masculine,) by a change of termination into *a*, signify the fruit, and become of the feminine gender: as, *pero*, a pear-tree; *pera*, a pear. But *fico*, *pomo*, *cedro*, serve to express both the fruit and tree, and mean a fig or a fig-tree, an apple or an apple-tree, a lemon or a lemon-tree. *Aran- cio*, an orange-tree, is also employed to signify the fruit; but this last meaning is not countenanced by the dictionary. *Noce*, a walnut-tree, is of the masculine gender; *noce*, a walnut, is feminine.

10. Nouns in *u* are of the feminine gender: as, *gioventù*, youth; except *Perù*, which is masculine, *Cefalù*, *Corfù*, which are of both genders.

EXERCISE,

FOR THE PUPIL TO MARK THE GENDERS.

Patriarca,	<i>Patriarch.</i>	imperatrice,	<i>empress.</i>
eremita,	<i>hermit.</i>	dente,	<i>tooth.</i>
legista,	<i>lawyer.</i>	argento,	<i>silver.</i>
tavola,	<i>table.</i>	oro,	<i>gold.</i>
regina,	<i>queen.</i>	rame;	<i>copper.</i>
re,	<i>king.</i>	mano,	<i>hand.</i>

febbre ,	<i>fever.</i>	ottobre ,	<i>october.</i>
susino ,	<i>plum-tree.</i>	novembre ,	<i>november.</i>
susina ,	<i>plum</i>	dicembre ,	<i>december.</i>
quercia ,	<i>oak.</i>	clima ,	<i>climate.</i>
ghianda ,	<i>acorn.</i>	tema ,	<i>theme.</i>
sinderesi ,	<i>remorse.</i>	tema ,	<i>fear.</i>
lunedì ,	<i>monday.</i>	manoscritto ,	<i>manuscript.</i>
martedì ,	<i>tuesday.</i>	arbusto ,	<i>shrub.</i>
mercoledì ,	<i>wednesday.</i>	corrente ,	<i>current.</i>
giovedì ,	<i>thursday.</i>	folgore ,	<i>thunderbolt.</i>
venerdì ,	<i>friday.</i>	Genesi ,	<i>Genesis.</i>
sabato ,	<i>saturday.</i>	Perù ,	<i>Peru.</i>
domenica ,	<i>sunday.</i>	gru ,	<i>crane.</i>
gennajo ,	<i>january.</i>	virtù ,	<i>virtue.</i>
febbrajo ,	<i>february.</i>	castità ,	<i>chastity.</i>
marzo ,	<i>march.</i>	splendore ,	<i>splendour.</i>
aprile ,	<i>april.</i>	dolore ,	<i>pain.</i>
maggio ,	<i>may.</i>	inchiostro ,	<i>ink.</i>
giugno ,	<i>june.</i>	penna ,	<i>pen.</i>
luglio ,	<i>july.</i>	pena ,	<i>punishment.</i>
agosto ,	<i>august.</i>	trave ,	<i>beam.</i>
settembre ,	<i>september.</i>		

LESSON III.

NUMBERS.

Nouns are further distinguished by having two Numbers, the Singular, which implies one object, and the Plural, which implies two or more objects.

Italian Nouns have their plural formed differently from their singular, with few exceptions.

11. Nouns having their last vowel accented, do not change in the plural: as *re*, king; *re*, kings; *maestà*, majesty, or majesties. Every monosyllable noun comes under this rule, all Italian words which are monosyllables being accented in pronunciation.

12. Nouns of the masculine gender, whatever their termination may be in the singular, change the last vowel of this number into an *i* for the plural: as, *maestro*, master; *maestri*, masters; *clima*, clime; *climi*, climes; *cane*, dog, *cani*, dogs.

13. Feminine nouns ending in *a*, change this letter into an *e*: as, *casa*, house; *case*, houses.

14. Nouns in *ca* and *ga*, whether masculine or feminine, require in the plural an *h* before the final vowel, for the sake of preserving the harsh sound of the *c* and *g*, which would otherwise be lost by the change of the vowel. Ex. *monarca*, monarch; *monarchi*, monarchs; *lega*, league; *leghe*, leagues.

Nouns ending in *cia* and *gia* pronounced short, without any accent upon the *i*, change the *ia* into an *e*; as, *minaccia*, threat; *minacce*, threats; *spiaggia*, shore; *spiagge*, shores; but nouns of these terminations in which the *i* is accented, or sensibly pronounced, follow the general rule: as, *provincia*, province; *provincie*, provinces; *magia*, incantation; *magie*, incantations.

15. Nouns in *e* change that vowel into an *i* in the plural: as, *prete*, priest; *preti*, priests; *madre*, mother; *madri*, mothers. Except those ending in *ie*, which have no variation in either number: as, *specie*, species; *requie*, rest; *superficie*, surface; *barbarie*, cruelty; *progenie*, progeny; *serie*, series; *effigie*, effigy.

But *moglie*, wife; and *bue*, an ox, make in the plural *mogli*, *buoi*.

Mille, thousand, makes *mila*; but *mille* also is used for the plural.

16. Nouns in *i* have no variation in the plural: as, *ipotesi*, hypothesis and hypotheses.

17. Nouns in *o* form their plural by changing that vowel into *i*: as, *mano*, hand; *mani*, hands.

Except nouns thus terminated by abbreviation, which always have the plural of the word in its original form: as, *caligo*, (from *caligine*) smoke; *caligini*, plur.; *testudo*, (from *testudine*) tortoise; *testudini*, plural.

Uomo, man, makes its plural *uomini*, men.

18. Those in *ajo* have their plural in *ai*, and those in *ojo*, in *oi*: as, *portinajo*, porter; *portinai*, porters, *strettojo*, press; *strettoi*, presses.

19. Nouns in *io* short, (that is, not accented on the *i*,) make their plural in *ii* or *j* at option, the contraction in *j* is, however, more used: as, *tempio*, temple, *tempj*, or *tempii*, temples.

20. Those in *io* long, (or in which the *i* is accented,) have their plural always in *ii*: as, *mormorio*, murmur, *mormorii*, murmurs. Except *Dio*, God, which makes *Dei*, Gods, in prose; but in poetry, *Dii*, is also used.

21. Nouns in *cio*, *chio*, *gio*, *glio*, short, make the plural in *ci*, *chi*, *gi*, *gli*; as, *cacio*, cheese; *caci*, cheeses; *ciliegio*, cherry-tree; *ciliegi*, cherry-trees; *occhio*, eye; *occhi*, eyes; *figlio*, son; *figli*, sons.

22. Nouns in *co* and *go*, of two syllables, make their plural in *chi*, *ghi*: as, *luogo*, place; *luoghi*, places; *fico*, fig; *fichi*, figs.

Except, *porco*, pig; *Greco*, Greek, which make *porci*, *Greci*.

23. Those in *co* and *go*, of more than two syllables, take no *h* in the plural: as, *amico*, friend; *amici*, friends; *teologo*, a divine; *teologi*, divines.

The following, however, are exceptions, admitting the *h* in the formation of their plural.

Antico,	ancient.	dialogo,	dialogue.
aprico,	sunny.	dimentico,	forgetful.
briaco,	} drunk.	fondaco,	warehouse.
ubbriaeo,		impiego,	employment.
becafico,	becafico.	intrigo,	intrigue.
carico,	load.	manico,	handle.
caduco,	perishable.	obbligo,	obligation.
castigo,	punishment.	opaco,	opaque.
catalogo,	catalogue.	parroco,	curate.

presago,	<i>predicter.</i>	ripiego,	<i>expedient.</i>
prodigo,	<i>prodigal.</i>	sacrilego,	<i>sacrilegious.</i>
prologo,	<i>prologue.</i>	salvatico,	<i>wild.</i>
pudico,	<i>chaste.</i>	scarico,	<i>unloading.</i>
rammarico,	<i>sorrow.</i>	traffico,	<i>traffic.</i>

24. Nouns terminating in *co* and *go*, with another consonant united, make their plural in *chi* and *ghi*: as, *bifolco*, ploughman; *bifolchi*, ploughmen; *albergo*, inn; *alberghi*, inns.

25. Some nouns in *o* form their plural in *a*, and then change their gender, being masculine in the singular, and feminine in the plural: example,

Centinajo,	<i>a hundred;</i>	centinaja,	<i>hundreds.</i>
migliajo,	<i>a thousand;</i>	migliaja,	<i>thousands.</i>
miglio,	<i>mile;</i>	miglia,	<i>miles.</i>
moggio,	<i>a measure for corn;</i>	moggia,	
staio,	<i>bushel;</i>	staja,	<i>bushels.</i>
pajo,	<i>pair;</i>	paja,	<i>pair.</i>
uovo,	<i>egg;</i>	uova,	<i>eggs.</i>

26. Other nouns in *o* have two terminations in the plural, forming it both in *i* and in *a*: the former are masculine, the latter feminine; but some are used preferably in one termination, and some in another. In the following list, the asterisk will denote those less used in the feminine plural in *a*, than in the masculine in *i*.

Anello,	<i>ring,</i>	anelli	and anella.
braccio,	<i>arm,</i>	bracci,	braccia.
budello,	<i>bowel,</i>	budelli,	budella.
calcagno,	<i>heel,</i>	calcagni,	calcagna.

carro,	<i>cart,</i>	carri,	carra.*
castello,	<i>castle,</i>	castelli,	castella.
ciglio,	<i>eyebrow,</i>	cigli,	ciglia.
corno,	<i>horn,</i>	corni,	corna.
dito,	<i>finger,</i>	diti,	dita.
filo,	<i>thread,</i>	fili,	fila.
fondamento,	<i>foundation,</i>	fondamenti,	fondamenta.
frutto,	<i>fruit,</i>	frutti,	frutta.
fuso,	<i>spindle,</i>	fusi,	fusa.*
ginocchio,	<i>knee,</i>	ginocchi,	ginocchia.
grido,	<i>cry,</i>	gridi,	grida.
labbro,	<i>lip,</i>	labbri,	labbra.
lenzuolo,	<i>sheet,</i>	lenzuoli,	lenzuola.
membro,	<i>limb,</i>	membri,	membra.
muro,	<i>wall,</i>	muri,	mura.
osso,	<i>bone,</i>	ossi,	ossa.
peccato,	<i>sin,</i>	peccati,	peccata.*
pomo,	<i>apple,</i>	pomi,	poma.
pugno,	<i>fist,</i>	pugni,	pugna.
quadrello,	<i>dart,</i>	quadrelli,	quadrella.
riso,	<i>laugh,</i>	risi,	risa.
sacco,	<i>bag,</i>	sacchi,	sacca.*
strido,	<i>shriek,</i>	stridi,	strida.
vestimento,	<i>raiment,</i>	vestimenti,	vestimenta.
vestigio,	<i>vestige,</i>	vestigi,	vestigia.

EXERCISE

FOR THE PUPIL TO WRITE DOWN THE PLURALS

Falsità,	<i>falsehood.</i>	pecchia,	<i>bee.</i>
duce,	<i>duke.</i>	prato.	<i>meadow.</i>
signore,	<i>gentleman.</i>	cielo,	<i>heaven.</i>
gregge,	<i>flock.</i>	pianeta,	<i>planet.</i>

teatro ,	<i>theatre.</i>	esempio ,	<i>example.</i>
commedia.	<i>comedy.</i>	dito ,	<i>finger.</i>
tragedia ,	<i>tragedy.</i>	unghia ,	<i>nail.</i>
opera ,	<i>opera.</i>	pollice ,	<i>thumb.</i>
penna ,	<i>pen.</i>	indice ,	<i>fore-finger.</i>
città ,	<i>town.</i>	dito-medio ,	<i>middle-finger.</i>
minaccia ,	<i>threat.</i>	anellare ,	<i>ring-finger.</i>
ape ,	<i>bee.</i>	mignolo ,	<i>little-finger.</i>
braccio	<i>arm.</i>	ago ,	<i>needle.</i>
spalla ,	<i>shoulder.</i>	gotico ,	<i>gothic.</i>
gamba ,	<i>leg.</i>	petto ,	<i>breast.</i>
piede ,	<i>foot.</i>	zotico ,	<i>clownish.</i>
giorno ,	<i>day.</i>	tragico ,	<i>tragic.</i>
fatica ,	<i>labour.</i>	magnifico ,	<i>magnificent.</i>
sega ,	<i>saw.</i>	comico ,	<i>comic.</i>
moglie ,	<i>wife.</i>	ubbraico ,	<i>drunk.</i>
bue ,	<i>ox.</i>	zio ,	<i>uncle.</i>
Dio ,	<i>God.</i>	desio ,	<i>desire.</i>
legge ,	<i>law.</i>	bacio ,	<i>kiss.</i>
porco ,	<i>pig.</i>	straccio ,	<i>rag.</i>
maga ,	<i>witch.</i>	orecchio ,	<i>ear.</i>
labbro ,	<i>lip.</i>	malvagio ,	<i>wicked.</i>
bocca ,	<i>mouth.</i>	figlio ,	<i>son.</i>
mento ,	<i>chin.</i>	navilio ,	<i>vessel.</i>
occhio ,	<i>eye.</i>	calpestio ,	<i>trampling.</i>
capello ,	<i>hat.</i>	bragia ,	<i>burning coal.</i>
parrucca ,	<i>wig.</i>		

Adjectives in the formation of their plural follow the rules on the nouns.

LESSON IV.

ARTICLE.

The Article is a word placed before a noun to show how far its signification extends.

The definite article *the* is expressed by *il*, *lo*, or *la*, which are declined as follows:

Singular.	{	Nominative or	}	il	lo	la	<i>the.</i>
		Accusative.					
	{	Genitive.		del	dello	della	<i>of the.</i>
		Dative.		al	allo	alla	<i>to the.</i>
		Ablative.		dal	dallo	dalla	<i>from the.</i>
Plural.	{	Nominative or	}	i	gli	le	<i>the.</i>
		Accusative.					
	{	Genitive.		dei or de'	degli	delle	<i>of the.</i>
		Dative.		ai or a'	agli	alle	<i>to the.</i>
		Ablative.		dai or da'	dagli	dalle	<i>from the.</i>

1. *Il* is placed before a masculine noun beginning with any consonant, except an *s* united with another consonant, which is termed *s impura*, as, *il mare*, the sea; *il sole*, the sun.

Lo is prefixed to nouns of the masculine gender beginning with *s impura*, as, *lo strepito*, the noise.

It has become a common practice to use *lo* instead of *il* before nouns masculine beginning with a *z*, and Italian grammars published for the instruction of other nations give this as a general rule, but in opposition to the precepts of the best

Italian grammarians (1), the example of classic writers, and the opinion of some good modern judges, who concur in using *il* before nouns of that kind, in the singular: as, *il zio*, the uncle; *il zaffiro*, the sapphire; *il zero*, the zero; *il zucchero*, the sugar. It is, however, the universal rule and practice to use *gli*, and not *i*, with the plural of such nouns, *gli zii*, *gli zaffiri*, etc.

Dei, Gods, takes the article plural *gli* instead of *i*: as, *gli Dei*, the Gods; *degli Dei*, of the Gods.

Lo is also used before nouns of the masculine gender beginning with a vowel, but then suffers an elision of the *o*; as, *l' amore*, the love; *l' elsa*, the handle; *l' impero*, the empire; *l' occhio*, the eye; *l' udito*, the hearing.

La is used before a noun feminine beginning with any consonant or vowel: as, *la marina*, the navy; *la stella*, the star; *la industria*, the industry.

2. *Lo* is contracted in both numbers before an *i*: as, *l' idolo*, the idol; *gl' idoli*, the idols. Before any other vowel the elision takes place only in the singular; as, *l' uomo*, the man; *gli uomini*, the men.

La is contracted in the singular before an *a*: as, *l' amica*, the friend; and before an *e* in the

(1) Buommattei; — Corticelli; — Soave.

plural, as, *l'epoche*, the epochs: in other instances it is better to give this article entire, as, *la epoca*, *le amiche*, although examples to the contrary are found.

3. The prepositions *con*, with; *in*, in; *per*, for; *su*, upon, when followed by the article, are joined to it in the following way.

	Before a noun that takes the article <i>il</i> .		Before a noun that takes the article <i>lo</i> .		Before a noun that takes <i>la</i>	
	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plur.</i>	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plur.</i>	<i>sing.</i>	<i>plur.</i>
<i>With the</i> is expressed by <i>col</i> , <i>coi</i> or <i>co'</i>			<i>collo</i>	<i>cogli</i>	<i>colla</i>	<i>colle</i>
			or		or	
<i>In the</i> is expressed by <i>nel</i> , <i>nei</i> or <i>ne'</i>			<i>con lo</i>	<i>con gli</i>	<i>con la</i>	<i>con le</i>
<i>For the</i> is expressed by <i>pel</i> , <i>pei</i> or <i>pe'</i>			<i>nello</i>	<i>negli</i>	<i>nella</i> , <i>nelle</i>	
<i>On the</i> is expressed by <i>sul</i> , <i>sui</i> or <i>su'</i>			<i>per lo</i>	<i>per gli</i>	<i>per la</i>	<i>per le</i>
			<i>sullo</i>	<i>su gli</i>	<i>sulla</i>	<i>sulle</i>

Examples

With the book, *col libro*; with the noise, *con lo strepito*; with the bell, *colla campana*.

In the book, *nel libro*; in the noise, *nello strepito*; in the bell, *nella campana*.

For the book, *pel libro*; for the noise, *per lo strepito*; for the bell, *per la campana*.

On the book, *sul libro*; on the rock, *sullo scoglio*; on the bell, *sulla campana*.

Collo, *colla*, *colle*, *nello*, etc. are liable to the same elisions as the articles when alone: Ex. *nell' uomo*, *sull' uomo*.

It is proper to remark, that the most exact writers use the first only of these formations of

the article with *con*, in one word, and prefer *con lo*, *con la*, *con gli*, *con le*, to the rest, which are also words of other signification, *cogli* being an inflexion of the verb *cogliere*, and *collo*, *colla*, *colle*, being substantives.

4. *Di*, *a*, *da*, are used with nouns, partly in the nature of an indefinite article, partly in that of prepositions, in a manner corresponding with the English particles *of*, *to*, *from*.

<i>Di Londra</i> , Of London.	{	Before nouns beginning with a vowel, <i>di</i> suffers an elision of the <i>i</i> , and <i>a</i> becomes <i>ad</i> ; but <i>da</i> remains without alteration: as, <i>d' Andrea</i> , of Andrew; <i>ad Andrea</i> , to Andrew; <i>da Andrea</i> , from Andrew.
<i>A Londra</i> , To London.		
<i>Da Londra</i> , From London.		

6. The *Definite Article* in Italian, being employed to convey both a *general* and an *individual* meaning, is used before common substantives when taken in the full extent of their signification, and also when limited to one or more specific objects: as, men are mortal, *gli uomini sono mortali*, here is the man whom you punished, *ecco l'uomo che puniste*; the men that have dined with you, *gli uomini che hanno pranzato con voi*.

6. Names of countries of great extent, empires, kingdoms, provinces, etc. are generally used with

the definite article; as, Russia is a large country, *la Russia è un vasto paese*.

No precise rule on this head can be fixed with regard to islands, for some take the article: as, *la Sicilia*, Sicily; *la Sardegna*, Sardinia; *l'Elba*, Elba; and others reject it: as, *Malta*, Malta; *Cipro*, Cyprus; *Cuba*, Cuba.

7. Whenever there is a personal title followed by the name of the country which gives it, we only make use of *di*: as, the king of Spain, *il re di Spagna*, and not *il re della Spagna*.

8. The definite article is suppressed before names of empires, kingdoms, etc. when they are not taken in the full extent of their meaning: as, he is in France, *egli è in Francia*. Consequently, when there is a motion *to*, or *from* them, we only put the prepositions. In this case *into* is expressed by *in*: as, I go from Italy into Germany, *Vado dall'Italia in Germania*.

9. We must except some countries in Asia, Africa, and America, which generally take the article: as, let us go to Peru, *andiamo al Perù*; they come from China, *vengono dalla Cina*.

10. Proper names of persons, towns, villages, and small places, do not take the article: as, we see Paris, *vediamo Parigi*; we go to Paris, *andiamo a Parigi*; I see Peter, *vedo Pietro*.

11. With a family name, however, the article is used: as, *Il Petrarca*, *Il Tasso*.

12. A name of person or place preceded by an adjective takes the definite article: as, old James, *il vecchio Giacomo*; Almighty God, *l' Onnipotente Iddio*, or *Dio Onnipotente*.

13. The article is placed before personal titles followed by proper names: as, General Hill, *il Generale Hill*; King Charles, *il Re Carlo*.

14. (1) *Signore*, Mr.; *Signora*, Mrs. or Miss, follow the preceding rule: as, Mr. Holland, *il Signor Holland*; Mr. Smith, *il Signore Smith*; Mrs. N.; *la Signora N*.

15. The words *casa*, house; *contado*, country; *bottega*, shop; *chiesa*, church; *corte*, court; *palazzo*, palace, (meaning the sovereign's,) taken in an indeterminate manner and preceded by a preposition, are used without the definite article: as, he goes to court every month, *va alla corte ogni mese*; go to the palace, *andate a palazzo*. But we say *vedo il palazzo*, I see the palace, because it is taken in a determinate sense.

16. When two nouns form the denomination of a thing with regard to its use, the first of these, (being employed adjectively,) in English, is placed the second in Italian, governed by *da*: as,

(1) *Signore* is contracted before a noun beginning with a vowel, or any consonant but the *s impura*.

a bed-room, *una camera da letto*; a wine-bottle, *una bottiglia da vino*.

17. When two nouns designate a thing or person according to matter, quality, or country, the noun specifying this quality, etc. which is often in like manner the first in English, employed adjectively, is also the second in Italian, but governed by *di*: as, a gold watch, *un oriuolo d'oro*; Florence wine, *vino di Firenze*; a school-master, *un maestro di scuola*.

18. A noun employed adjectively before another noun in English to describe or define a thing according to its form, shape, or particularity of construction, is transposed in Italian as in the two foregoing rules, but governed by *a*: as, a bell-lamp, *una lampada a campana*; a tant-be-stead, *una lettiera a padiglione*. (1)

19. When the nation or province of a person is mentioned, it takes *di*; if the town or place of his birth, it takes *da*, to signify a native of that country or town: *Boccaccio da Certaldo*, Boccaccio, a native of Certaldo; *Astolfo d'Inghilterra*, Astolfo, a native of England: *questa gio-*

(1) It is to be observed that the two languages are not always uniform in these three modes of expression, the one language having sometimes a single word when the other has two for the designation of a thing or person; sometimes employing an adjective or participle instead of the accessory noun; or other variation: as, a wash-house, *lavatoio*; a laundry, *stanza del bucato*; winding stair-case, *scala a lumaca*; folding-door, *porta a due imposte*.

vane non è da Cremona, nè da Pavia; anzi è di Sardegna, this young female is not a native of Cremona, nor of Pavia; but rather of Sardinia.

20. (1) *Del, dello, della, dei, degli, delle*, before a noun in the nominative or accusative case, are Englished by *some* or *any*: as, *datemi del pane*, give me some bread; will you have any bread? *volete del pane?* meaning a certain portion of what is mentioned: if no particular portion is meant, but the substance or kind is intended to be mentioned without limitation, then no article is used: as, he sells bread, wine, and beer, *vende pane, vino, e birra*. We shall eat no meat, *non mangeremo carne*; those you see are sailors, *quelli che vedete sono marinari*; the captain has punished some soldiers, *il capitano ha punito dei soldati*, (or *alcuni soldati*). In the last example the article is used because we mean a certain number of them, though that number be not specified.

21. The English *Indefinite Article a* or *an* is expressed by *uno, una, un, un'*. *Uno* is used before a noun masculine beginning with *s impura*, or a *z*; *un*, before a noun of the same gender beginning with a vowel, or any other consonant than the *s impura*, or *z*; *una*, before a

(1) Some grammarians have called the article thus applied *Partitive*.

noun feminine beginning with a consonant; and *un'* before a noun feminine, having a vowel for its initial letter. Ex. *uno specchio*, a looking-glass; *uno zelo indiscreto*, an indiscreet zeal; *un castello*, a castle; *una fortezza*, a fortress; *un amico*, a friend; *un' erba velenosa*, a poisonous herb.

22. *A* or *an* is suppressed in Italian: 1. After the verbs *to be*, *to become*, with a noun expressing the country, profession, dignity or other quality of the nominative of the verb: as, he is an Englishman, *egli è Inglese*; you will be a captain, *sarete capitano*; you will become an admiral, *diverrete ammiraglio*. 2. With a noun of the same kind after the verbs *to make*, *create*, *appoint*, *elect*, *chuse*, *declare*, *proclaim*, whatever may be the nominative to that verb: as, the king made him a knight, *il re lo fece cavaliere*; she declared him a madman, *ella lo dichiarò matto*. 3. Before a noun in apposition, that is, serving to qualify another noun which precedes: as, Mr. N. a cavalry-officer, *il signore N. uffiziale di cavalleria*; the Thames, a fine river, *il Tamigi, bel fiume*. 4. Before a title of a book: as, A French Grammar, *Grammatica Francese*.

23. In speaking of buying or selling any thing, the Indefinite Article *a* or *an* used in English

with the noun of *number, measure, or weight*, is expressed in Italian by the Definite Article *il, lo, la*, etc.: as, he sells sugar two shillings a pound, *vende lo zucchero due scellini la libbra*.

24. *The* placed before a noun in apposition, or immediately following another, of which it expresses a quality, is suppressed in Italian: as, Mr. Grant, the son of John, *il Signor Grant, figlio di Giovanni*; Cardinal Richelieu, the prime minister of Louis the 13th, *il Cardinale Richelieu, primo ministro di Luigi decimterzo*.

EXERCISE on the preceding Rules.

She received a pension from the prince. The princes were
ricevè pensione principe. erano
 in the garden. Where are the carriages of the ministers?
giardino. Ove sono carrozza
 Give the letter to the inspector. The army will arrive (the
Date lettera ispettore. esercito arriverà
 day after to-morrow.) The armies were encamped on the
diman l' altro. accampati
 banks of the Danube. The noise of the people, and the
sponda Danubio. strepito gente ed
 sound of the instruments (hindered us) from hearing the
suono istrumento c' impedirono di sentire
 (1) king's speech. A shell fell on the roof. They sent some
discorso. bomba cadde tetto, mandarono

(1) In English the genitive may be placed before the substantive governing it; in Italian the genitive follows the noun: as, the father's house, *la casa del padre*, viz. the house of the father.

soldiers into the different theatres. His book is on the table.

diversi teatro. Il suo

Do not throw the apples on the carpet. The gods were deaf

= non gettate mela tappeto. sordi

to the prayers of the wicked. The will of the Gods. Three

preghiera volontà Tre

bulls were sacrificed to the Gods. The wives of the unfortunate

toro furono immolati sventurati

2 4

prisoners sent a petition to the Emperor. Lions are not

prigionieri supplica Leone

2 4

so ferocious as tigers. Money is a necessary thing.

tanto feroce quanto tigre. Denaro necessaria cosa.

Iron is dear. Wine is dear in England. Portugal

Ferro caro. a caro prezzo Inghilterra. Portogallo

is quiet. The King of Naples is at Vienna. I (shall go) to

tranquillo. Napoli ——— andrò

Poland with the governor's brother. We (shall set out)

Polonia governatore fratello. partiremo

on the 20th from Prussia. I shall go to Paris. The letters

= venti ———

came from London. Turin is the capital of

vennero Torino capitale (fem.)

Piedmont. The Emperor of Russia has left the Congress.

Piemonte. ha lasciato Congresso.

He is in Spain. We receive the orders from the captain.

riceviamo ordine

Tea comes from China. Do you like Madeira wine? Give

Tè viene Vi piace Madera Datemi

me a writing-table, ten wine-bottles, six coffee-spoons, and

scrivere dieci sei caffè cucchiarino,

some pens. (Here is) the silver-spoon. We have lost
Ecco cucchiajo, perduto
 two iron guns. I have a gold chain. (Bring us) a bottle of
due cannone. Io ho catena. Recateci
 wine. I was speaking to Mr. N. (a native of) Tuscany.
stava parlando di Toscana.
 We supped with Mrs. N. (a native of) Paris. Where is the
cenammo da

2 4

master of the house? He is not at home. He was at court.
padrone in casa, in
 We shall go to court. He (went out) of the house. He
alla uscì
 comes from town. They are in the shop. Is he in the
 palace? Captain D. the son of Mr. N., is now at church. I
adesso

go to church. The merchants were at a wedding. He has
vo negoziante nozze.
 a friend at court. (He who) lives at court does not always
chi vive =

say the truth. What countryman are you? I am a Ger-
dice verità. Di che paese siete voi?
 man. Is he a Scotchman? (No, sir,) he is an Irishman.
Scozzese. Signor no, Irlandese.

(By his dress) he (appears to me) a stranger. She is a
All' abito mi sembra straniero.

Marchioness and not a Countess. He is a Captain (in
Marchesa e Contessa. di
 the navy.) Are you a poet? We have every day some
marina. poeta. ogni giorno

river fish. The Lady of the Lake, a poem. A treatise on
fiume pesce, donna lago poema. trattato

eloquence. I have been at Marsilles, a fine town (near
eloquenza. Marsiglia bella vicino
 Toulon.) Do you sell brandy? Yes, sir. (Give me then) a
a Tolone. = vendete acquavite? Sì, dalemene
 glass of it.
bicchiere (mas.) =

LESSON V.

ADJECTIVE.

1. An Adjective is a word expressing the quality of a Substantive, and agrees with it in gender and number.

2. Italian adjectives end chiefly in *o* and *e*: some few have their termination in *i*. Those in *o* change the *o* into an *a* for the feminine; and those in *e* and *i* are of both genders. Ex. *Re benefico*, beneficent king; *regina benefica*, beneficent queen; *uomo felice*, happy man; *donna felice*, happy woman.

3. For their plural they follow the rules respecting the formation of that number in nouns.

4. Adjectives in Italian may generally be placed both before and after their substantives; but there are some niceties of the language on this point which must be acquired by the reading of the classics with attention. Such rules as have been given by different Grammarians upon it, amount to the following:

Adjectives of *shape, colour, nation; verbal adjectives*, and those that express any quality of the four elements, are, in common conversation, and epistolary style, put after their substantives: as, *un cappello rotondo*, a round hat; green shoes, *scarpe verdi*; the English orators, *gli oratori Inglesi*; a grateful man, *un uomo riconoscente*; cold water, *acqua fredda*; damp weather, *tempo umido*.

5. It is to be observed, that whenever we are desirous of directing the special attention of the hearer or reader to an epithet or adjective used, this adjective should be placed after the noun.

6. When an adjective has a reference to several substantives, and is detached from them by a verb, it is put in the plural; if they are of different genders, the adjective is used in the masculine, and the substantive masculine should be placed last whenever it can be so without impropriety: as, *le valli e le colline sono belle*, the vallies and hills are beautiful; *le sorelle e i fratelli del vostro amico erano contenti*, the brothers and sisters of your friend were pleased.

7 If an adjective be placed immediately after several substantives without a verb, it may agree with the last: as, *l' ora ed il luogo opportuno*, the proper time and place.

EXERCISE.

The sister is rich. The brother is rich. The sisters were rich. The brothers were rich. The brothers and sisters were rich. The water is cool. Give me a glass of white wine.

fresco.

bicchieri bianco

Take some red shoes. A pair of black shoes. I (shall give
Prendete rosso *nero* *vi darò*
 you) the green velvet. A grateful master. A grateful lady.
verde velluto. *signora.*

I (shall speak) to-morrow to an English traveller. She
parlerò *domani* *viaggiatore.*

married a French general. How many officers have you?
sposò *generale.* *quanto (adj.)*

How many bottles of red wine shall (we drink)? She has
beremo

(a great many) friends. I have (too many) enemies. They
molto (adj.) *troppo (adj.)*

will have (a few) rivals. He is a sincere friend. She is a
pochi (adj.) rivali. *sincero amico.*

sincere friend. This table is too short. How many swords
amica. *Questa* *troppo corto.* *spada*

have you? How many looking-glasses has he sent? Your
specchio *mandati? Vostro*

brother has had too much trouble. White paper. A black
carta.

gown. These India handkerchiefs are coarse.

gonna. *Questo — fazzoletto ordinario.*

LESSON VI.

COMPARATIVES.

8. As adjectives express the qualities of substantives, and we may either increase or diminish these qualities in different ways; hence arise the degrees of comparison, the *positive*, *comparative*, and *superlative*.

The adjective taken in its simple signification is called *positive*; in a higher or lower degree, *comparative*; in the highest or lowest degree, *superlative*: as, *ricco*, rich; *più ricco*, richer; *il più ricco*, the richest; *ricchissimo*, most, or very rich.

9. An adjective in English becomes comparative by placing the adverb *more* before the positive, or adding *er* to it. In Italian the comparative is expressed by the adverb *più*, and the adjective: as, more industrious, *più industrioso*; wiser, *più savio*.

Meno, less, and *meglio*, better, are also used in making a comparison: as, he is less affable, *egli è meno affabile*; we are better acquainted with this transaction, *noi siamo meglio informati di questa faccenda*.

10. *Than* is expressed

1st. By *del*, *dello*, *della*, *dei*, *degli*, *delle*.

2d. By *di*.

3d. By *che*.

11. When followed by a noun or pronoun which takes the definite article in Italian, *than* is rendered by *del, dello*, etc.: as, gold is heavier than silver, *l'oro è più pesante dell'argento*; he is more learned than the master, *è più dotto del maestro*; we are more diligent than your friend, *siamo più diligenti del vostro amico*.

12. It is rendered by *di*, when followed by a proper name or pronoun which does not take the definite article:

He is stronger than Peter.

Egli è più forte di Pietro.

Your cousin is taller than you.

Il vostro cugino è più alto di voi.

13. *Than* may also be rendered by *che* in all the preceding cases, when requisite for avoiding the ungraceful repetition of *di, del*, etc. in any part of the sentence; thus it would be preferable to say,

He is more learned than the master of the college.

È più dotto che il maestro del collegio.

He is stronger than Peter of Rome.

Egli è più forte che Pietro di Roma.

14. *Than* is always rendered by *che*, when the comparison is between *two adjectives*, between *two verbs in the infinitive mood*, or *two*

adverbs; and when it precedes a noun governed by a preposition: as, he is more lucky than wise, *egli è più fortunato che savio*; it is better to speak than to be silent, *è meglio parlare che tacere*; they behaved more courageously than prudently, *si comportarono più coraggiosamente che prudentemente*; he was more esteemed in Rome than in Florence, *egli era più stimato in Roma che in Firenze*.

15. *Than*, followed by a verb not in the infinitive mood, is expressed by *che non*, or *di quello che*. Ex. We are stronger than you believe, *siamo più forti che non credete*, or, *siamo più forti di quello che credete*.

16. As . . . as	} are rendered by	{	<i>tanto . . . quanto</i>
So . . . as			<i>quanto</i>
(1) As much . . . as			<i>così . . . come</i>
So much . . . as			<i>altrettanto . . . che</i>

So much . . . as	} are rendered by	{	<i>tanto . . . quanto</i>
So many . . . as			<i>quanto</i>
As much . . . as			
As many . . . as			

He is as cautious as the father.

Egli è tanto cauto quanto il padre.

Egli è cauto quanto il padre.

(1) When followed by a participle.

Egli è così cauto come il padre.

Egli è altrettanto cauto che il padre.

We were as much rewarded as you.

Noi eravamo tanto ricompensati quanto voi.

Noi eravamo ricompensati quanto voi.

Noi eravamo così ricompensati come voi.

Noi eravamo altrettanto ricompensati che voi.

We work as much as you.

Noi lavoriamo tanto quanto voi.

He has as much prudence as you.

Egli ha tanta prudenza quanta ne avete voi.

In these two latter examples, *tanto*, *tanta*, may be omitted.

17. *Much* placed before a comparative is expressed by *assai*, *molto*, *via*, or *vie*: as, much greater, *assai più grande*, etc.; much more amiable, *vie più amabile*, etc.

18. The article cannot be used with comparatives in Italian as it is in English; for instance, The more he works the more he gains, must be rendered, *Più lavora, più guadagna*; or, in more correct Italian, *quanto più lavora tanto più guadagna*.

Note. Exercises upon this, and the following Lessons, are placed together at the end of the *Grammar*.

LESSON VII.

SUPERLATIVES.

19. The superlative is either absolute or relative; the superlative absolute is not compared with any object; the relative is.

20. The superlative absolute is made by changing the last vowel of the positive into *issimo*, *issima*, etc. or by placing the adverbs *molto*, *assai*, very, before the positive: as, *onesto*, honest; *onestissimo*, *molto onesto*, *assai onesto*, very honest.

21. This superlative is sometimes expressed by annexing to the positive the particles *stra*, or *arci*: as, *bello*, handsome; *strabello*, *arcibello*, very handsome. But these are modes of expression by no means noble or elegant.

22. The duplication of the positive has the force of this superlative: as, *buono buono*, extremely good; *grande grande*, exceedingly great; *nuovo nuovo*, perfectly new.

23. Adjectives in *co* and *go* requiring an *h* in the plural, take it also before *issimo*, *issima*, etc.: as, *ricco*, rich; *ricchissimo*, very rich.

24. Adjectives in *io* become superlatives by changing *io* into *issimo*: as, *savio*, wise; *savissimo*, very wise.

25. The superlative relative is expressed by *il*

più, la più, etc.: as, the strongest, *il più forte*.

26. If a superlative relative should follow the substantive, no article is to be placed between: as, the most active soldier, *il più attivo soldato*, or *il soldato più attivo*. Those who imitate the French in repeating the article, (as, *il soldato il più attivo*,) deviate from the genius of the Italian language.

27. This superlative takes after it the genitive, or the prepositions *tra, fra*: as, *la più bella fra le*, or *delle sorelle*, the handsomest of the sisters; the most passionate in the family, *il più collerico della famiglia*.

28. Adjectives which are irregular in the formation of their comparatives and superlatives.

	Positive.	Comparative.		Superlative.
		adjective.	adverb.	
Good	<i>buono</i>	<i>migliore</i>	<i>meglio</i>	<i>ottimo</i> , or <i>buonissimo</i> .
Bad	<i>cattivo</i>	<i>peggiore</i>	<i>peggio</i>	<i>pessimo</i> , or <i>cattivissimo</i> .
Small	<i>piccolo</i>	<i>minore</i>	<i>meno</i>	<i>minimo</i> , or <i>piccolissimo</i> .
Great	<i>grande</i>	<i>maggiore</i>		<i>massimo</i> , or <i>grandissimo</i> .
Acrid	<i>acre</i>			<i>acerrimo</i> .
Celebrated	<i>celebre</i>			<i>celeberrimo</i> .
Salubrious	<i>salubre</i>			<i>saluberrimo</i> .
Upright	<i>intero</i>			<i>integerrimo</i> .
Miserable	<i>misero</i>			<i>miserrimo</i> , or <i>miserissimo</i> .

They take the comparative and the relative superlative in the common method also: as, *grande, più grande, il più grande*.

LESSON VIII.

CARDINAL AND ORDINAL NUMBERS.

<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>
1 Uno, una.	1st Primo.
2 Due.	2d Secondo.
3 Tre.	3d Terzo.
4 Quattro.	4th Quarto.
5 Cinque.	5th Quinto.
6 Sei.	6th Sesto.
7 Sette.	7th Settimo.
8 Otto.	8th Ottavo.
9 Nove.	9th Nono.
10 Dieci.	10th Decimo.
11 Undici.	11th Undecimo, undicesimo, or decimo primo.
12 Dodici.	12th Duodecimo, dodicesimo, or decimo secondo.
13 Tredici.	13th Decimo terzo, tredicesimo.
14 Quattordici.	14th Decimo quarto, quattordicesimo.
15 Quindici.	15th Decimo quinto, quindicesimo.
16 Sedici.	16th Decimo sesto, sedicesimo.
17 Diciassette.	17th Decimo settimo, diciassettesimo.
18 Diciotto.	18th Decimo ottavo, diciottesimo.
19 Diciannove.	19th Decimo nono, diciannovesimo.
20 Venti. (uno.)	20th Ventesimo, or vigesimo.
21 Ventuno, or vent'	21st Ventesimo primo, or vigesimo primo.
22 Ventidue.	30th Trentesimo, or trigesimo.
23 Ventitre.	40th Quarantesimo, or quadragesimo.
24 Ventiquattro.	50th Cinquantesimo, or quinquagesimo.
25 Venticinque.	60th Sessantesimo, or sessagesimo.
26 Ventisei.	70th Settantesimo, or settuagesimo.
27 Ventisette. (otto.)	80th Ottantesimo, or ottuagesimo.
28 Ventotto, or vent'	90th Novantesimo, or nonagesimo.
29 Ventinove.	100th Centesimo.
30 Trenta.	1000th Millesimo.
40 Quaranta.	
50 Cinquanta.	
60 Sessanta.	
70 Settanta.	
80 Ottanta.	
90 Novanta.	
100 Cento. (cento.)	
200 Dugento, or due	

<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Collective.</i>
300 Trecento.	Un pajo, <i>a pair.</i>
400 Quattrocento.	Una decina, <i>half a score.</i>
4,000 Mille.	Una dozzina, <i>a dozen.</i>
2,000 Due mila.	Una ventina, <i>a score.</i>
100,000 Cento mila.	Una trentina, <i>to the number of thirty.</i>
4,000,000 Un milione.	Una quarantina, <i>to the number of forty.</i>
2,000,000 Due milioni.	Una cinquantina, <i>half a hundred.</i>
<i>[Distributive.</i>	Un centinajo, <i>to the number of a hundred.</i>
Ad uno ad uno, <i>one by one.</i>	Un migliajo, <i>to the number of a thousand.</i>
A due a due, <i>two by two.</i>	A centinaja, <i>by hundreds.</i>
A tre a tre, <i>three by three; and so on.</i>	A migliaja, <i>by thousands.</i>
	Millanta, <i>thousands upon thousands.</i>

1. *Uno, una*, is liable to the same contractions when a Numeral as it is when an Article: but cannot be contracted at the end of a phrase; as,
I have four, and you have one.

Io ne ho quattro, e voi ne avete uno.

2. *Uno*, or *una*, annexed to a number, requires the following substantive to be in the singular: as, *ventuno scudo*, twenty-one crowns; *quarantuna libbra*, forty-one pounds. But if the article, or the substantive to the number, is prefixed, we then make use of the plural: as, I have received the thirty-one crowns you sent me, *ho ricevuto i trentuno scudi che mi mandaste*; I will give you twenty-one crowns, *vi darò scudi ventuno*.

3. *One*, or *a*, before *hundred* or *thousand*, is not expressed in Italian, with the cardinal number; nor is the conjunction *and* in the notation of years: as, one hundred men, *cento uomini*; in the year one thousand eight hundred and twenty, *nell' anno mille otto cento venti*.

4. Cardinal numbers are indeclinable, except *uno*, *mille*, *milione*, as we have already seen.

5. Ordinal numbers are declinable, and agree in gender and number with the substantive: as, *il primo cavallo*, the first horse; *la prima battaglia*, the first battle; the first horses, *i primi cavalli*; the first battles, *le prime battaglie*.

6. In speaking of kings, princes, etc. we suppress in Italian the article, placed in English before the ordinal number: as, Charles the fifth, *Carlo quinto*.

7. The date of the month is expressed as follows: *il primo*, the first; *il, ai, i*, or *li due*, the second; *il, ai, i*, or *li tre*, the third; and so on, with the cardinal numbers. *Il* and *ai* are preferable to *i* and *li*.

8. In mentioning the time of day, we may say,

Sono tre ore, or *sono le tre*;

It is three o'clock:

Vi vedrò a quattro ore, or *alle quattro*;

I shall see you at four o'clock:

the article being used with *ore* when the numeral follows, and omitted when it precedes. But when *ora* or *ore* is not expressed, the article is then always used with the numeral.

È l'una, it is one; *sono le tre*, it is three.

Vi vedrò alle quattro, I shall see you at four.

Alle due pomeridiane, at two in the afternoon.

The *half* hour is expressed by *mezzo*; the quarter, by *quarto*, thus:

Come at half past two, *venite alle due e mezzo*.

In half an hour, *di qua a mezz'ora*.

A quarter past one, *l'una ed un quarto*.

A quarter to three, *le tre meno un quarto*.

9. *All*, preceding a number, takes the conjunction *e*, and, except before a vowel: as, *tutti e quattro*, all four; *tutti otto*, all eight.

- | | | | | |
|-------------------|---|--------------|---|--|
| 10. <i>Ambo</i> , | } | indeclinable | { | admit the article
with substantives;
as, both generals,
<i>ambo</i> or <i>ambi</i> i ge-
nerali; both em-
presses, <i>ambo</i> or
<i>ambele</i> imperatrici. |
| <i>Ambidue</i> , | | | | |
| <i>Amendue</i> , | | | | |
| <i>Ambi</i> , | } | declinable | { | |
| <i>Entrambi</i> , | | | | |

LESSON IX.

AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES.

1. The Italian has an advantage over other languages in the facility with which it is able to alter the signification of primitive nouns, by annexing to them certain syllables, without resor-

ting to the aid of other words. The nouns of this kind consist of two general classes, denominated *accrescitivi*, augmentatives, and *diminutivi*, diminutives; each of which has its subdivisions.

2. Nouns that change their last vowel into *one* become augmentatives. They are of the masculine gender, though the primitive word be feminine: as, *libro*, book; *librone*, a great book; *cassa*, chest; *cassone*, a large chest. Others end in *otto*, *otta*, and indicate a smaller degree of increase; as, from *giovane*, a youth; *giovannotto*, a well grown youth; *contadino*, a peasant; *contadinotto*, a stout peasant; *casa*, a house; *cassotta*, a house somewhat large.

3. Diminutives, for the most part, change their last vowel into *ino*, *ina*; *ello*, *ella*; *etto*, *etta*: as, *principe*, prince; *principino*, a young prince; (1) *contadino*, peasant; *contadinello*, a young peasant; *contadina*, country woman; *contadinella*, a country lass; *povero*, poor; (2) *poveretto*, a poor little man; *poveretta*, a poor little woman.

4. But many diminutives are formed more arbitrarily: as, from

Acqua, water; *acquerugiola*, slight rain;
libro, book; *libercolo*, small book;

(1) *Contadino* is not a diminutive, but a primitive word.

(2) *Poveretto* masc. Denote as well as smallness endearment and a sense of compassion. *Poveretta* fem.

vecchio, old man; *vecchierello*, poor old man;
vecchia, old woman; *vecchierella*, poor old woman;
ghiottone, glutton; *ghiotterello*, one nice in eating;
cane, dog; *cagnuolo*, little dog;
letto, bed; *letticciuolo*, little bed.

5. The language has another class of nouns called *peggiorativi*, vilifying, which convey an idea of badness or baseness. They end in *accio*, *accia*, and in *astro*, *astra*: as, *poeta*, poet; *poetastro*, paltry poet: *coltello*, knife; *coltellaccio*, a large bad knife.

Allied to them is a class of terminations in *aglia*, *ame*, and *ume*, which denote a collection or quantity of what is signified by the primitive word, sometimes in a simple sense, but more frequently in a sense of vilifying or contemning.

SIMPLY COLLECTIVE.

From *antico*, ancient; *anticaglia*, antiquities;
bestia, beast; *bestiame*, cattle;
verde, green; *verdume*, { a quantity of
greens.

COLLECTIVE AND VILIFYING.

Gente, people { *gentaglia*, { a rabble;
gentame, {
minuzia, minuteness, { *minuzzaglia*, { a parcel of
minuzzame. { scraps, of
any sort;
impaccio, nuisance, { *pacciame*, { a heap of
pacciume, { dirt.

6. Of the diminutives, some apply simply to dimension: as,

casetta, small house; *libretto*, little book;
ometto, little man; *donnetta*, little woman.

Others, which are termed *dispregiativi*, express contemptuousness: as,

omicciatto, paltry fellow;
donnicciuola, low woman;
dottoretto, insignificant doctor.

Others, again, called *vezzeggiativi*, are of a playful or caressing nature: as,

fratellino, dear little brother;
sorellina, dear little sister.

7. A second diminutive is frequently formed from the first: as, from

cassetta, little case; *cassettina*, very little case;
ometto, little man; *omettolo*, very little man.

8. In like manner the augmentative and vilifying have their force increased or varied by a new formation: as, from

omaccio, a worthless man; *omaccione*.

9. The great number of variations which may be given to a single word will appear in the following from *casa*, house; which, however, are not all in common use, though all found in the dictionary.

(Note) *Poveraccio*, masc. Means poor fellow in a sense both of compassion or goodness of temper. *Poveraccia*, fem.

Diminutivi.	Accrescitivi.	Peggiorativi.
<i>Casetta,</i>	<i>casotta,</i>	<i>casaccia.</i>
<i>casettino,</i>	<i>casotto,</i>	<i>casoccia.</i>
<i>casettina,</i>	<i>casone,</i>	<i>casuccina.</i>
<i>casella,</i>	<i>casaggio,</i>	<i>casalone.</i>
<i>caserella,</i>	<i>casamento,</i>	<i>casolare.</i>
<i>caserellina,</i>		<i>casolaraccio.</i>
<i>casellina,</i>		<i>casucciaccia.</i>
<i>casellino,</i>	Disprezziativi.	
<i>casina,</i>	<i>casile.</i>	
<i>casino,</i>	<i>casipola.</i>	
<i>casinina,</i>	<i>casupola.</i>	
<i>caserino.</i>		
<i>casuccia.</i>		
<i>casuzza.</i>		

10. Some of the formations of words of this kind are synonymous, because in different parts of Italy different terminations prevail, without any difference of signification; for instance, *dottorino*, *dottoretto*, and *dottorello*, are equally disparaging derivatives of *dottore*.

11. Adjectives also are formed into Augmentatives and Diminutives, with varieties of signification.

AUGMENTATIVE.

From *bello*, handsome; *bellone*, mighty handsome; *grande*, large; *grandaccio* and *grandonaccio*, enormously large.

LESSON X.**PRONOUNS.**

A Pronoun is a word employed instead of a noun.

In Italian there are seven sorts of Pronouns, viz. Personal, Conjunctive, Possessive, Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite.

Some of these stand in the nature of Substantives, and some in the nature of Adjectives; and are subject, like them, to distinctions of number, case, and gender, with variations of formation.

Some Pronouns, however, undergo no variation; but serve unaltered for the different numbers, etc.

Personal Pronouns have a further distinction, being divided into the first, second, and third person. All other Pronouns are of the third person, except the *Relative*, which agree in person with their Antecedents.

PERSONAL AND CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

1. **Personal Pronouns**, agreeably to their denomination, are expressive of Persons, and are of the nature of Substantives: when put into oblique cases, and governed by verbs, they are called **Conjunctive Pronouns**, having, as such, a peculiar variation of form.

Pronouns of the first person are intended to si-

gnify the person, or persons, who speak, or who are associated with the speaker, *Io*, I; *noi*, we.

Those of the second signify the person, or persons, to whom the speech is addressed, *tu*, thou; *voi*, you.

Those of the third, some other person, or persons, spoken of, *egli*, he; *ella*, she; *eglino*, mas. *elleno*, fem. they.

FIRST PERSON.

Singular.

N.	<i>I</i>	<i>Io</i>	Conjunctive.
G.	<i>Of me</i>	<i>Di me</i>	
D.	<i>To me</i>	<i>A me</i>	Mi.
Acc.	<i>Me</i>	<i>Me</i>	Mi.
Abl.	<i>From me</i>	<i>Da me</i>	

Plural.

N.	<i>We</i>	<i>Noi</i>	
G.	<i>Of us</i>	<i>Di noi</i>	
D.	<i>To us</i>	<i>A noi</i>	Ci, or ne.
Acc.	<i>Us</i>	<i>Noi</i>	Ci, or ne.
Abl.	<i>From us</i>	<i>Da noi</i>	

SECOND PERSON.

Singular.

N.	<i>Thou</i>	<i>Tu</i>
G.	<i>Of thee</i>	<i>Di te</i>

PRONOUNS.

57

Conjunctive.

D.	<i>To thee</i>	A te	Ti.
Acc.	<i>Thee</i>	Te	Ti.
Abl.	<i>From thee</i>	Da te	

Plural.

N.	<i>You</i>	Voi	
G.	<i>Of you</i>	Di voi	
D.	<i>To you</i>	A voi	Vi.
Acc.	<i>You</i>	Voi	Vi.
Abl.	<i>From you</i>	Da voi	

THIRD PERSON.

Singular—Masculine.

N.	<i>He</i>	Egli, Ei, E'	
G.	<i>Of him</i>	Di lui	
D.	<i>To him</i>	A lui	Gli.
Acc.	<i>Him</i>	Lui	Lo or Il.
Abl.	<i>From him</i>	Da lui	

Plural.

N.	<i>They</i>	Eglino	
G.	<i>Of them</i>	Di loro	
D.	<i>To them</i>	A loro	
Acc.	<i>Them</i>	Loro	Li, Gli
Abl.	<i>From them</i>	Da loro	

Conjunctive.

N.	<i>Yourself</i>	Voi stesso	
G.	<i>Of yourself</i>	Di voi stesso	
D.	<i>To yourself</i>	A voi stesso	Vi.
Acc.	<i>Yourself</i>	Voi stesso	Vi.
Abl.	<i>From yourself</i>	Da voi stesso	

Plural.

N.	<i>Yourselves</i>	Voi stessi	
G.	<i>Of yourselves</i>	Di voi stessi	
D.	<i>To yourselves</i>	A voi stessi	Vi.
Acc.	<i>Yourselves</i>	Voi stessi	Vi.
Abl.	<i>From yourselves</i>	Da voi stessi	

THIRD PERSON.

Singular—Masculine.

N.	<i>Himself</i>	Egli stesso	
G.	<i>Of himself</i>	Di se stesso	
D.	<i>To himself</i>	A se stesso	Si.
Acc.	<i>Himself</i>	Se stesso	Si.
Abl.	<i>From himself</i>	Da se stesso	

Plural.

N.	<i>Themselves</i>	Eglino stessi	
G.	<i>Of themselves</i>	Di se stessi	
D.	<i>To themselves</i>	A se stessi	Si.
Acc.	<i>Themselves</i>	Se stessi	Si.
Abl.	<i>From themselves</i>	Da se stessi	

Conjunctive.

THIRD PERSON.

Singular — Feminine.

N.	<i>Herself</i>	Ella stessa	
G.	<i>Of herself</i>	Di se stessa	
D.	<i>To herself</i>	A se stessa	Si.
Acc.	<i>Herself</i>	Se stessa	Si.
Abl.	<i>From herself</i>	Da se stessa	

Plural.

N.	<i>Themselves</i>	Elleno stesse	
G.	<i>Of themselves</i>	Di se stesse	
D.	<i>To themselves</i>	A se stesse	Si.
Acc.	<i>Themselves</i>	Se stesse	Si.
Abl.	<i>From themselves</i>	Da se stesse	

2. Personal Pronouns in the nominative case may be either expressed (as in English), or omitted and understood (as in Latin). It is preferable, however, to suppress them, unless used emphatically for the special attention of the hearer to them, or required for distinctness to prevent ambiguity.

3. These pronouns become conjunctive when in the dative or accusative case, governed by a verb; which they may then either precede or follow. In common conversation they are usually put before the verb:

He spoke to me ; *mi parlò*. I saw her ; *la vidi*.

4. A conjunctive pronoun placed after the verb is always joined to it:

He was speaking to me; *parlavami*. I saw her; *vidila*.

When the verb terminates in a vowel accented, the initial letter of the pronoun annexed is doubled; as,

Give me; *dammi*. He spoke to me; *parlommi*.

Gli is the only pronoun exempted from this rule: tell him, *digli*, and not *diggli*.

Note, that the vowels of all monosyllables are considered to be accented.

5. These pronouns, coming with a verb in the infinitive mood, a gerund, or a participle, are placed after, and joined:

I can write to him; *posso scrivergli*.

In writing to him; *scrivendogli*.

To have written to him, *avergli scritto*.

Having written to him; *scrittogli*, or *avendogli scritto*.

6. With a verb in the imperative mood, if employed affirmatively, the conjunctive pronoun is placed after, if negatively, precedes;

Speak to us; *parlateci*.

Do not speak to us; *non ci parlate*.

An exception to this rule is, that the pronoun is better placed before an imperative verb, even affirmatively employed, when in the third per-

son: thus, *gli dica*, let him say to him, preferable to *dicagli*, which, however, is correct Italian.

7. The present of the infinitive mood, when united to any of these pronouns, loses the final *e*, as in the examples given above; and if the infinitive ends in *rre*, the final *re* is cut off: as, in *condurre*, — we can conduct them, *possiamo condurli*.

8. *Ecco*, a word of frequent use in the sense of *behold*, has a conjunctive pronoun annexed to it, as if it were a verb, in the following and similar phrases: *eccomi*, behold me, or here I am; *eccoci*, behold us, here we are; *eccoti*, etc.

9. *With me* is expressed by *meco*; *with thee*, by *teco*; and *with himself*, *with herself*, *with themselves*, by *seco*, more elegantly than by *con me*, *con te*, *con se*, which also are in use.

With him, *with her*, *with them*, having reference to the nominative of the verb, are expressed by *seco*, preferably to *con lui*, *con lei*, *con loro*: and still more properly, as well as usually, by *seco lui*, *seco lei*, *seco loro* (1): as, He took me with him; *mi condusse seco*, or *seco lui*.

10. The conjunctive pronouns cannot be used

(1) *Con meco*, *con teco*, *con seco*, are antiquated modes of expression, the revival of which has been attempted by some modern writers, but which are affectations to be reprobated: *nosco*, *vosco*, are worse; and *con nosco*, *con vosco*, still more intolerable.

in any case where contradistinction or emphasis is intended; as,

I punish you, and not him; *io punisco voi, e non lui*.
 Speak to me, and not to her; *parlate a me, e non a lei*.

Io vi punisco, parlatemi, would here be improper.

11. All the conjunctive pronouns serve, unvaried, for different cases, and some of them for different numbers also: for example,

Le avete parlato? Have you spoken to her?

Le sentiva cantare; I heard them sing.

They are sometimes employed by good writers in different cases and numbers, even in the same sentence, as in the following:

Restandogli (dat. sing.) *la speranza d'opprimergli* (acc. plur.)

The hope of oppressing them remaining to him.

12. *Il* is used as a conjunctive pronoun before a consonant, (when it is not *s impura*, but rather in lofty style, than in common conversation; I see him; *Il vedo*, or *lo vedo*. I esteem him; *lo stimo*, and not *il stimo*.

13. *Gli*, as accusative plural, is used only before a verb beginning with a vowel, and *s impura*, or a z: as,

I honour them; *gli onoro*.

I esteem them; *gli stimo*.

I will hang them ; *gli zomberò*.
 But we say, I see them , *li vedo*.

14. *Loro* may be used as the dative to a verb,
 with or without the preposition *a* : as,

Parlate loro, or *parlate a loro*; speak to them.

The same may be done with *lui* and *lei* : as,

Io dissi lui, or *a lui*; I said to him ;

but the first mode is less usual with respect to
 this pronoun in the singular.

15. *Egli* is sometimes employed expletively in
 the neutral sense of *it* (in the nominative): as, it
 is true ; *egli è vero* ; which may be expressed , *è*
vero, without *egli*, just as well.

LESSON XI.

PERSONAL AND CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS CONTINUED

Singular.

Masc.		Fem.	
<i>Esso</i> ,	He.	<i>Essa</i> ,	She.
<i>Medesimo</i> ,	Self.	<i>Medesima</i> ,	Self.
<i>Desso</i> ,	Own-self.	<i>Dessa</i> ,	Own-self.

Plural.

Masc.		Fem.	
<i>Essi</i> ,	<i>Esse</i> ,	They.	
<i>Medesimi</i> ,	<i>Medesime</i> ,	Selves.	
<i>Dessi</i> ,	<i>Desse</i> ,	Own-selves.	

These three pronouns do not change in the oblique cases.

1. *Esso* is employed, 1. as a personal pronoun, the same as *egli*; but is rather more demonstrative:

Esso entrò in cammino; he entered on his road.

Cambierebbe anche essa; she too would change.

Essi soffrono e non isperano;

They suffer and do not hope.

2. *Esso* is joined to personal pronouns governed by the preposition *con*, without variation of gender or number; it is then used in the nature of a demonstrative pronoun, but is frequently nothing more than an expletive:

Con esso lui, with him. Con esso lei, with her.

Con esso noi, voi, loro; with us, you, them.

3. *Esso*, in its oblique cases, performs the office of a relative pronoun, as in these examples:

Un giardino, e in mezzo di esso una fontana;

A garden, and in the middle of it a fountain.

Rispettate l'opinione pubblica; colui che non si cura di essa, non è prudente;

Respect public opinion; he who does not care for that, is not prudent.

I panni furono trovati, e con essi, i denari;

The clothes were found, and with those, the money.

16. *Medesimo*, and *stesso*, which both signify

self, are so much alike that they are used indifferently with pronouns to express emphasis, opposition, or discrimination :

Io stesso, mas. *stessa*, fem.; I myself.

Tu stesso, *stessa*; thou thyself.

He did it himself; *lo fece egli stesso*, *egli medesimo*.

She did it herself; *lo fece ella stessa*, *ella medesima*.

He was himself contrary to my opinion ;

Era egli medesimo contrario alla mia opinione.

Considering with myself, with himself ;

Considerando meco medesimo, *seco medesimo*.

17. *Desso*, which is employed in its nominatives only, carries such force of expression, that Italian Grammarians term it a pronoun of asseveration :

È desso; it is his *very self*.

Ella è ben dessa; it is really *she her own-self*.

Mai più sarò desso;

I shall never be *my proper self* again.

Dipinto sì simile alla natura che piuttosto pare dessa;

Painted so like to nature that it rather appears (nature) *her very self*.

18. The frequent and varied employment of the conjunctive pronouns requires particular attention.

Ne is employed, 1. as a conjunctive personal pronoun in the following examples:

Ne hanno lasciati soli; they have left us alone.

Se egli non viene, ne aspetti;

If he does not come, let him expect *us*.

Non so che possa riuscirne altro che danno;

I know not what else can come *to us* but harm.

La morte n'è sopra le spalle;

Death is at *our* backs.

Non avari affetti ne spronarono alla impresa, e ne furono guida;

Not avaricious affections spurred *us* to the enterprise, and were *our* guide.

2. *Ne* is employed as a relative pronoun, referring to some antecedent substantive, or subject of discourse; and then serves to signify

of, to, for, from, by, with, or about { *it, them,*
him, her,
them.

È inutile il parlarne, it is useless speaking of it.

Se volete meglio concepirne l'idea;

If you will better conceive the idea *of it*.

Canto quando ne ho voglia;

I sing when I have inclination *for it*.

Se ne parlerebbe per un anno continuo;

They would talk *about it* for a whole year.

Ne ho fatto più disegni, fra quali n'è piaciuto uno;

I have made several drawings *of it*, amongst which one *of them* is approved.

Ha nel cor tanto fuoco che tutto ne arde;

He has in his heart such fire, that he is all burning *with it*.

Tante lampade apparirono d'intorno che l'aria ne fu lucida;

So many lamps appeared around that the air was illuminated *by them*.

La conobbe subito, benchè sien più di che non ne udì novella.

He knew her instantly, although he had heard no news *of her* for many a day.

In rendering *ne* into English, when thus employed, propriety of language will often require *one, any, some*, to be added to, or substituted for, *of it, of them*:

Se hai desir d'un elmo fino, trovane un altro;

If thou desirest a fine helmet, find another one.

Queste pere sono buone: ne volete? Ne ho.

These pears are good: will you have any? (*of them*). I have some (*of them*).

3. *Ne* is much employed with neutral verbs of motion: as,

Andarsene; to go away.

Venirsene; to come away.

Se ne va; he is going away.

La donzella spaventata ne veniva;

The affrighted damsel was coming *on*.

Fu necessario che i capitani se ne levassero;

It was necessary that the captains should move *off*.

In this mode of speech, *ne* seems generally to be an expletive; but, having always reference to some place mentioned or understood, means *from it*; namely, *this* or *that place*, whatever it may be.

4. To give emphasis and avoid repetition, *ne* may be also employed in the same sense with reference to adverbs signifying *this place*, *that place*:

Partite di qua, e partitene subito;

Depart from this, and depart *from it* directly.

Uscite di là, ed uscitene subito;

Go out of that, and go out *of it* directly.

19. *Ci* and *vi* are employed

1. As conjunctive personal pronouns in the following examples:

Egli non ci abbandonerà;

He will not abandon *us*.

Se quella disgrazia non ci fosse avvenuta;

If that misfortune had not happened *to us*.

Vi pagherò tutto insieme;

I will pay *you* all together.

Scusatemi se vi parlo con libertà;

Excuse me if I speak *to you* with freedom.

2. They are employed as relative pronouns, referring to some antecedent substantive, or subject of discourse, to signify

of, to, for, at, in, or upon { *it.*
 them.

Ci penserò; I shall think of it.

Io ci darò rimedio; I shall furnish remedy for it.

Noi ci troveremo buon compenso;

We shall find good compensation *in it*.

Mi ci sono alfine risoluto;

I am at last resolved *upon it*.

Ascoltai queste parole senza rispondervi;

I listened to these words without replying to *them*.

3. They are also both much used instead of adverbs of locality, for *it*, *to*, *in*, or *from it* (the place in question), *ci* having the sense of *here*, or *this* place, *vi* of *there*, or *that* place:

Mi ricordo d' esserci venuto;

I remember having come *to it (this place)*.

Non so ben ridir come vi entrai;

I cannot well recount how I entered it (*that place*).

Venni allora in Roma, e ci sono stato già quattro mesi;

I came then to Rome, and have been in it (this city) four months already.

Quel balcone è pieno di gente; vi vedo due uffiziali navali;

That balcony is full of people; I see *in it* two naval officers.

4. *Vi* and *ci* are sometimes substituted for each other in such phrases, to prevent an awkward repetition of either in different senses: as,

Egli vi ci condurrà, rather than *vi condurrà*;
He will conduct you *to it* (that place).

But it is much better to use an adverb, or other mode of expression, in such cases, to avoid all ambiguity as well as cacophony: for instance,

Egli vi condurrà colà; he will conduct you there.

5. These two words are employed, indifferently, with verbs in impersonal modes of speaking, in which they are mere expletives, and may be omitted in many instances, though not in all; the use of them being too much established by custom in some:

Non ce n'è; *there* is none of it.

Non ce ne sono, or *non ve ne sono*; *there* are none of them.

Ci sono, or *vi sono alcuni avverbj i quali*—;
There are some adverbs which—.

Vi era un uomo che; *there* was a man who.

Non vi è altro rimedio; *there* is no other remedy.

20. Sufficient instances of the conjunctive pronouns of the third person, used personally, have been presented in the preceding lesson. They also serve as relative pronouns, with reference to things or irrational beings: as such, they are employed in the accusative only, but with variation of gender and number, as follows:

Singular.

Plural.

Mas. <i>Il</i> or <i>lo</i>	} It.	<i>Li</i> or <i>gli</i>	} Them.
Fem. <i>La</i>		<i>Le</i>	

Here is the book, I shall read it;

Ecco il libro, lo leggerò.

Take the box, and send it to Mr. Jones;

Prendete la scatola, e mandatela al Signor Jones.

Do you see the horses? I see them;

Vedete i cavalli? li vedo.

Eat these pears, you will find them good;

Mangiate queste pere, le troverete buone.

Propriety of language will sometimes require *lo*, to be rendered *so*, instead of *it*:

La signora pare giovinetta, e lo è in effetto;

The lady appears young, and is *so* in reality.

Non sono mai stato geloso; non lo sono, e non lo sarò:

I have never been jealous; I am not *so*, and I will not be *so*.

21. *Mi, ti, ci, vi, si*, change their *i* into *e* when they meet with any of the other conjunctive pronouns (viz. *lo, la, li, gli, le*, or *ne*,) as in several of the foregoing examples. The two pronouns are then sometimes united, as one word, before a verb:

me lo, or *melo direte*, you will tell it me;

ce li, or *celi darete*, you will give them to us;

ve ne, or *vene parlerà*, he will speak to you of it.

But it is better to write them separately, as they may otherwise produce ambiguity, for *me-lo*, *vene*, *cene*, *mela*, *tela*, are all substantives; *cela* is a verb; and *velo* is both.

When they are thus conjoined, they have frequently the final vowel curtailed: as,

Mel direte; *men parlerete*.

But the contraction cannot take place in *la*, *li*, or *le* united with *me* or *te*, which must always be given uncurtailed, *mela*, *meli*, *mele*, etc.

22. *Gli*, in the dative, has an *e* added to it when followed by *lo*, *la*, *li*, *le*, or *ne*; and is used in this case for the feminine as well as the masculine, in order to avoid the disagreeable concurrence of *le lo*, *le la*, *le li*, *le le*; as,

Glielo dissi; I said so to her.

Mandategliele; send them to her:

Instead of *le lo dissi*, *mandatelele*. This licence is also used before *ne*, but unnecessarily; *le ne parlai* being more elegant and correct than *gliene parlai*, to signify, I spoke to her of it.

LESSON XII.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Are those which imply the possession of an object.

<i>mas. sing.</i>	<i>fem. sing.</i>	<i>mas. plur.</i>	<i>fem. plur.</i>	
<i>Il mio</i>	<i>La mia</i>	<i>I miei</i>	<i>Le mie</i>	My, or mine.
<i>Il tuo</i>	<i>La tua</i>	<i>I tuoi</i>	<i>Le tue</i>	Thy, or thine.
<i>Il suo</i>	<i>La sua</i>	<i>I suoi</i>	<i>Le sue</i>	His, her, hers, its.
<i>Il nostro</i>	<i>La nostra</i>	<i>I nostri</i>	<i>Le nostre</i>	Our, or ours.
<i>Il vostro</i>	<i>La vostra</i>	<i>I vostri</i>	<i>Le vostre</i>	Your, or yours.
<i>Il loro</i>	<i>La loro</i>	<i>I loro</i>	<i>Le loro</i>	Their, or theirs.

2. These Italian pronouns are generally declined with the definite article:

Send me your servant; *mandatemi il vostro servo.*

They see my friend, and yours;
Vedono il mio amico, ed il vostro.

3. They agree with the thing possessed, and never (as in English) with the possessor:

Buy his snuff-box; *comprate la sua tabacchiera.*

Do you sell her ring? *vendete il suo anello?*

4. They may be put either before or after the substantive:

Read my letter;
Leggete la mia lettera, or la lettera mia.

5. *My, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, coming with a noun that signifies any corporeal part, any faculty or affection of the mind (such as *anima*, soul, *mente*, mind, *spirito*, spirit, *me-*

moria, memory, *speranza*, hope, *paura*, fear,) and a verb of action or motion, are expressed by the corresponding conjunctive pronouns in the dative case, (viz. *mi*, *ti*, *gli*, *le*, *ci*, *vi*, *loro*,) and the definite article is placed before the substantive: as,

I broke his arm; *gli ruppi il braccio*.

I broke my leg; *mi ruppi la gamba*.

6. Consonant to this rule, *his*, *her*, *their*, are expressed by *si*, if they have a reference to the same person or persons as the nominative, and by *gli*, *le*, *loro*, if they have reference to some other person or persons: as

Peter broke his (own) arm;

Pietro si ruppe il braccio.

Peter broke his (John's) arm;

Pietro gli ruppe il braccio.

7. When the possessive pronouns are immediately followed by a noun of title or of kindred, they do not take the article, if that noun is in the singular number; *loro* alone excepted:

Ho dato il temperino a vostro padre;

I have given the penknife to your father.

Vidi sua Maestà; I saw his Majesty.

La loro madre ha quaranta cinque anni.

Their mother is forty-five years old.

This rule, however, is disregarded in elevated style and in poetry.

8. The article is required when a possessive pronoun comes before a noun of title or kindred in the plural ; when that noun is a diminutive in either number, or when an adjective, or *signore* or *signora*, intervenes ; as,

Il vostri fratelli m'hanno tradito ;

Your brothers have betrayed me.

Salutate da parte dell'avvocato il vostro Signor padre, e la vostra buona madre ;

Make the counsellor's compliments to your father and good mother.

Il nostro fratellino balla bene ;

Our little brother dances well.

9. A noun of title or kindred takes the article in the singular as well as the plural, when the possessive pronoun is placed after it :

Your sister ; *vostra sorella*, or *la sorella vostra*.

10. Possessive pronouns dispense with the article when they follow the verb *to be*, in the sense of belonging to :

Questo libro è mio ; this book is mine.

11. *Il mio*, my own ; *il tuo*, thy own ; *il suo*, his own ; *il nostro*, our own ; *il vostro*, your own ; *il loro*, their own ; are employed substantively, to signify substance or property ; as,

Ha cura del suo ; he takes care of his own (property).

12. *I miei*, *i tuoi*, *i suoi*, *i nostri*, *i vostri*, *i*

loro, are used substantively to signify *my*, *thy*, *his*, *our*, *your*, *their* relations, friends, followers, etc.:

Il generale comandò a' suoi d'attacare il nemico.

The general ordered his troops to attack the enemy.

13. When *his*, *her*, *their*, have reference to a noun not in the nominative case, they may be expressed either by *suo*, *sua*, *suoi*, *sue*, *loro*; or *his*, by *di lui*; *her*, by *di lei*; *their*, by *di loro*: as,

Noi stimiamo la Signora N. e sua figlia, or la di lei figlia;

We esteem Mrs. N. and her daughter.

But it will be proper to use *di lui*, *di lei*, *di loro*, whenever necessary to avoid ambiguity: as,

Egli fa dei doni alla Signora N. ed alla figlia di lei, or alla di lei figlia; (1)

He makes presents to Mrs. N. and her daughter: (*alla sua figlia* would mean to *his* rather than to *her* daughter).

14. A friend of *mine*, of *thine*, etc. is expressed by *un mio amico*, *un tuo amico*, or *uno dei miei amici*, *uno de' tuoi amici*.

(1) In some English-Italian Grammars it is said to be inelegant, and even incorrect, to put *di lui*, *di lei*, *di loro*, between the article and substantive. But this is erroneous, the practice being established by the best writers, ancient and modern; and, what is more, by common use.

15. Many Italians, especially the Tuscans, in speaking or writing to a *superior*, a *lady*, or a *gentleman*, with whom they are not familiar, make use of a title of the feminine gender, and of the third person: viz. *vostra signoria*, or *vos-signoria*, (your lordship, or ladyship,) for which *ella* is now generally substituted, in the following manner:

	Pers. Pron.	Conj. Pron.
N. <i>You (Madam, or Sir)</i>	Ella (1)	
G. <i>Of you</i>	Di lei	
D. <i>To you</i>	A lei	Le
Acc. <i>You</i>	Lei	La
Abl. <i>From you</i>	Da lei	
N. <i>You (Gentlemen)</i>	Lor Signori	
G. <i>Of you</i>	Di lor Signori	
D. <i>To you</i>	A lor Signori	
Acc. <i>You</i>	Lor Signori	Li, Gli
Abl. <i>From you</i>	Da lor Signori	
N. <i>You (Ladies)</i>	Lor Signore	
G. <i>Of you</i>	Di lor Signore	
D. <i>To you</i>	A lor Signore	
Acc. <i>You</i>	Lor Signore	Le
Abl. <i>From you</i>	Da lor Signore	

2. According to this mode of addressing per-

(1) *Lei* is frequently heard in conversation even in the nominative case, which, being an inaccuracy of language, should be avoided.

sons, *le Signorie loro* may be used both for gentlemen and ladies.

3. The verb is to be put in the third person : as,
How do you do, Sir?

Come sta, Signore? or come sta ella?

How do you do, Madam?

Come sta, Signora? or come sta ella?

How do you do, Gentlemen or Ladies?

Come stanno le loro Signorie, or le Signorie loro?

4. The *adjective* and *participle* agree with the title: as,

È ella soddisfatta?

Are you (Sir, or Madam) satisfied?

5. *Your*, having reference to *one person*, is expressed by *il suo, la sua*, etc. or by *di lei*: as,

Madam, give me your ear-rings;

Signora, mi dia i suoi orecchini.

I have read your order;

Ho letto il suo ordine, il di lei ordine, or l'ordine di lei.

6. *Your*, relating to *two or more persons*, is expressed by *il loro, la loro*, etc. as,

Gentlemen, your esteem is of great value to me:

Signori, la loro stima mi è di gran pregio.

7. This Italian mode of addressing persons of both sexes in the third person feminine is very

perplexing to foreigners; it is, however, so far from being general, that in some parts of Italy, it is taxed with being somewhat of an affectation: (1) the second person plural may therefore be used more naturally, and without indecorum. It is used in many parts by the best educated and most polite of the Italians.

(1) It seems to have been an innovation of the sixteenth century, adopted from the language of the Spaniards after they had obtained dominion in Italy, and to have been absolutely unknown before, as no traces of it are found in the earlier Italian writers; they never using *ella* to evince respect, but always *voi*. This is manifest from the following passage of Dante, in which he represents himself speaking with veneration to one of his ancestors:

“ Dal *voi* che prima Roma sofferie
Ricominciaron le parole mie.
Io cominciai: *Voi* siete il padre mio,
Voi mi date a parlar tutta baldezza,
Voi mi levate sì ch' io son più ch' io. ”

Petrarch, who always addresses Laura respectfully, employs the *voi* to her constantly:

“ *P* aggio profferto il cor , ma a *voi* non piace. ”

Boccaccio too, who describes the manners of real life, makes all his characters address their equals and superiors, of whatever rank, in the same style: “ Monsignore, io ho gran meraviglia di ciò che *voi* mi dite; ” is one instance out of an infinity.

Many other examples, in corroboration, might be adduced from the best authorities.

The *voi* is frequently used in Goldoni's scenes of genteel comedy, by his Italian personages; and the *ella* has never been introduced into the tragic drama, nor into poetry, even of modern times.

LESSON XIII.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The pronouns called demonstrative serve to point out or show objects. In the Italian language they consist of three classes, (1) which are very conducive to perspicuity of meaning.

The first class is composed of those which indicate the proximity of an object to the person who speaks.

The second class, of those which indicate the proximity of an object to the person spoken to.

The third class comprehends those which indicate the remoteness of an object both from the person spoken to and the person speaking.

We present these pronouns arranged in their respective classes.

1st Class.	2d Class.	3d Class.
Questi, <i>This person.</i>	Cotesti,	{ Quegli, (2) } masc. { quei, que', } sing. <i>That person. (male.)</i>
Questo,	{ Codesto, } { Cotesto, }	Quello, (3) quel, (m.) } } Singular.
Questa, <i>This.</i>	{ Codesta, } { Cotesta, }	
		Quella, (fem.) <i>That.</i>

(1) There are three classes of Adverbs corresponding to these of Demonstrative Pronouns; for which see that part of speech.

(2) In the plural, *quegli* is used before a vowel, an *s impura*, or a *z*; *quei* before any other consonans; *quelli* at the end of a phrase.

(3) In the singular, *quello* is used at the end of a phrase, before an *s impura*, or a *z*; *quell'* before a vowel; *quel* before a noun masculine beginning with a consonant, except *s impura*, and a *z*.

1st Class.	2d Class.	3d Class.	
Questi,	{ Codesti, }	{ Quelli, quegli, }	} Plural.
	{ Cotesti, }	{ quei, que', }	
Queste,	{ Codeste, }	Quelle, (fem.)	
<i>These.</i>	{ Coteste, }	<i>Those.</i>	
Costui,	{ Codestui, }	Colui, (masc.)	} Singular.
<i>This person.</i>	{ Cotestui, }	<i>That person. (m.)</i>	
Costei,	Cotestei,	Colei, (fem.)	
<i>This person.</i>		<i>That person. (f.)</i>	
Costoro	Cotestoro. (obs.)	Coloro,	} of both genders, plural.
<i>These persons.</i>		<i>Those persons.</i>	
Ciò,	{ <i>This or that (thing),</i> }		} serve for each class, unvaried.
Che,	{ <i>What (thing),</i> }		

2. None of these pronouns take the article, but are governed by the particles *di*, *a*, *da*:

The key of this door; *la chiave di questa porta*.

3. *Questi*, *cotesti*, and *quegli*, are distinct pronouns, having the nominative singular only, and always referring to a person:

Cotesti che non si noma;

That man who tells not his name.

Questi ci vincerà; this man will conquer us.

Quegli canterà; that man will sing.

4. *Questo*, *codesto*, *quello*, with all their variations, are applied to things as well as persons, and used adjectively with substantives as well as by themselves:

Oggi in questo luogo, domani in quello;

To-day in this place, to-morrow in that.

Vedendovi cotesti panni in dosso;

Seeing those clothes upon you.

Partite da cotesti; depart from those (persons).

5. *Stamane, stamattina*, this morning; *stasera*, this evening; *stanotte*, to-night; are contractions of *questa mane, questa mattina, questa sera, questa notte*.

6. *This coat of mine, that horse of yours*, etc., are expressed by *questo mio abito, cotesto vostro cavallo*.

7. *He, she, and they*, followed by a relative pronoun, are expressed by *colui, quegli* or *quei, colei, coloro, quegli* or *quei*:

He who is speaking to the Dutch officers is my uncle;

Quegli, che parla agli uffiziali Olandesi, è mio zio.

They know it who have tried it;

Coloro il sanno che l'hanno provato.

8. *Costui, costei, colui, colei*, with their respective plurals, have an idea of contempt attached to them in common conversation:

Mandate via colei; send that woman away.

Cacciate via costui; drive this fellow away.

In writing, and in solemn discourse, they are employed without conveying such idea.

9. *Cotestui, cotestei, cotestoro*, are now obsolete, though employed by classic writers formerly.

Codesto, codesta, etc. differ in orthography only from *cotesto, cotesta*, etc.

10. *Costui, costei, costoro* — *colui, colei, coloro*, may be employed in elevated diction, as the genitive governed by a noun, without *di*:

Il costui piacere, or il piacere di costui;

The pleasure of this man.

Al colei grido corse;

At the cry of that female he ran.

11. *This, that*, meaning *this thing, that thing*, are expressed by *questo, ciò, quello*: as,
Do not tell him that; *non gli dite ciò.*

What means this? *che vuol dir questo?*

12. *Questo* is often used alone, in a variety of meanings, with reference to some substantive understood:

In questo ella sopravvenne (momento understood);

At this (moment) she came up.

Io sono venuto a questo (fine or effetto);

I am come to this (end or purpose).

Mi hanno condotto a questo (stato);

They have conducted me to this (state).

13. *What*, used independently, without refe-

rence to a substantive, and meaning *what thing*, is expressed by *che*, (*cosa* being understood:)

I know not what to think; *non so che pensare.*

See what he may have done; *vedete che abbia fatto.*

LESSON XIV.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. A *Relative pronoun* has a reference to some preceding noun or subject of discourse; which is called its *antecedent*.

	Sing.	Plur.	
	Il quale	I quali	<i>Who which.</i>
	Quale	Quali	<i>What, which.</i>
Invariable.	Cui		<i>Whose, whom.</i>
	Che		<i>Who, which, that.</i>
	Ciò che	}	<i>That which, what.</i>
	Quel che		
	Il che		<i>Which.</i>

2. *Il quale, i quali, who, which*, is applied both to persons and things, and is varied in the article according to the gender of the antecedent:

The men whom you employ;

Gli uomini, i quali impiegate.

The stag which you killed;

Il cervo, il quale ammazzaste.

The trade to which I devote myself;

Il mestiere, al quale mi dedico.

Sette donne, i nomi delle quali racconterò;
Seven ladies, the names of whom I will mention.

3. *Che*, who, whom, which, that, serves for the nominative and accusative of both numbers and genders:

Dio che solo vede i cuori degli uomini;

God who alone sees the hearts of men.

The persons whom you saw; *le persone che vedeste.*

The dog that barks; *il cane che abbaja.*

The hares that run; *le lepri che corrono.*

4. *Cui*, whose, whom, serves, unvaried, in both numbers and genders, for all cases except the nominative. It is employed in the genitive and dative, with or without prepositions to denote them:

Yesterday arrived the officer from whom you will receive your orders;

Jeri arrivò l'uffiziale da cui riceverete i vostri ordini.

The men to whom you spoke;

Gli uomini a cui parlaste.

When used without one, its case is left to be determined by the context; depending on a noun, it is in the genitive, on a verb, it is in the dative or accusative.

In the genitive, it may be placed before or after the substantive on which it depends:

Whose courage, may be rendered, *il coraggio di cui*, *il cui coraggio*, or *di cui il coraggio*.

The two first examples are to be preferred.

When in the dative and accusative, it precedes the verb on which it depends:

L'uomo, cui darete i nostri bauli;

The man, to whom you will give our trunks.

Cui vinse l'ira; whom anger vanquished.

5. *Onde* is often employed in lofty style for *del quale*, *della quale*, *dei quali*, *delle quali*, *col quale*, etc.: as,

Le catene onde sono avvinto;

The chains with which I am bound.

6. *What*, *which*, having reference to a substantive which (in exception to the general rule of relative pronouns) it precedes, is expressed by *che* or *quale*:

I do not know what book I have read;

Non so che libro, or *Non so qual libro abbia letto.*

But when the phrase is admirative, *quale* cannot be used:

What a fine man! *che bell'uomo!*

What, meaning *that which*, is expressed by *ciò che*, or *quel che*:

I know what he has done; *so quel che ha fatto.*

What you say is very true; *ciò che dite è verissimo.*

7. *Which*, having reference to a sentence as the antecedent, is expressed by *il che* or *la qual cosa*:

They have not yet punished the highwayman;
which does not surprise me;
*Non hanno ancora punito il masnadiere; il
che non mi sorprende.*

8. A relative pronoun, which is frequently omitted and understood in English, is always expressed in Italian: as,

The houses you sold; *le case che vendeste.*

LESSON XV.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Are pronouns used in asking questions:

Chi? who? whom? whose?

Che? what?

Quale, sing. *quali*, *quai?* plu. what, which?

Quanto, *quanta?* sing. how much?

Quanti, *quante?* plu. how many?

2. *Chi* is applied to persons only: as,

Whom do you want? *Chi volete?*

Whose stores are these?

Di chi sono questi magazzini?

3. *Che* is employed both with and without a substantive:

What have you done? *Che avete fatto?*

Che cosa avete fatto? (not *cosa avete fatto?* which is a vulgar incorrectness); What have you done?

Che bastimento avete preso?

What vessel have you taken?

4. *Quale* and *quanto* may be joined to a substantive, or detached from it;

Qual giorno è questo? what day is this?

Quali sono le vostre ragioni?

What are your reasons?

Ecco i vostri bicchieri; qual prenderò?

Here are your wine-glasses; which shall I take?

Quanti libri avete? how many books have you?

La seta è bellissima: quanta ne avete comprato?

The silk is very fine: how much of it have you bought?

LESSON XVI.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. A pronoun that indicates objects in an indeterminate way is called *indefinite*.

Altro, altra, (<i>sing.</i>)	}	Other, others.
Altri, altre, (<i>plu.</i>)		
Altri, (<i>nom. sing.</i>) altrui,	{	Any one.
di altrui, (<i>gen.</i>) altrui,		Some one, another,
ad altrui, (<i>dat.</i>) altrui,		Somebody else,
(<i>acc.</i>) da altrui, (<i>abl.</i>)		Other people.
L'un l'altro,	{	The one, the other,
		One another,
		Each other.
L'uno e l'altro,	{	The one, and the
		other, both.
O l'uno o l'altro.	{	Either the one or the
		other, one or other.
Nè l'uno nè l'altro,	{	Neither the one nor
		the other.
Per uno,		Each.

2. *Altri*, besides being the plural of *altro*, serves for the nominative singular of a distinct pronoun, making *altrui* in the oblique cases:

If any person knew my misfortune;

Se altri sapesse la mia sciagura.

Altrui is employed in the genitive and dative (like *cui*) with or without prepositions. In the genitive it may either precede or follow the substantive: as,

Il denaro altrui, l'altrui denaro, or il denaro d'altrui;

Other people's money.

Io ne manderò altrui;

I shall send some to somebody else.

Non fare altrui quel che non vuoi per te ;
Do not to any one that which thou likest not
for thyself.

Altrui vile, a me caro ;
To other people vile, to me dear.

3. *L' altrui*, used substantively, means the property of others :

Abbate cura dell' altrui ;
Take care of other's property.
Dobbiam guardarci di togliere l' altrui ;
We ought to be careful not to take another's
property.

4. *Altro, altra*, is employed by itself as an indefinite pronoun, referring to persons :

Per mostrarsi d'essere altro che non era ;
In order to show himself to be other than he
was.
Non diventa altra, ma quale solea ;
She does not become another, but what she
used to be.

2. It is joined with the personal pronouns *noi* and *voi* in an expletive manner, for the sake of emphasis :

Per la pratica che noi altri abbiamo ;
By the practice which we have.
Noi altri Italiani ; we Italians.
Voi altri Inglesi ; you English.

3. It is connected adjectively with substantives of every kind:

Quasi altra bella giovane non si trovasse;

As if another handsome girl were not to be found.

Il tempo chiede altri pensieri, altri lamenti;

The time requires other thoughts, other lamentations.

5. *Altro*, substantively employed, conveys the meaning of *something else, any thing else*; as,

Volete altro? will you have any thing else?

Facendo semblante di ridere di altro:

Pretending to laugh at something else.

But when repeated in the same sentence, the repetition signifies *one thing, another thing, or two different things*:

Altro è adempire, altro è promettere;

To fulfil is one thing, to promise, another.

6. *Altro*, followed by *che*, in a negative sentence, is employed adverbially and conveys the meaning of *except, otherwise*:

Niuna cosa altro che nuvole e mare vedeva,
or *niuna cosa vedeva altro ec.*

He saw nothing except clouds and sea.

Non può essere altro che utile;

It cannot be otherwise than useful.

7. *L' uno e l' altro*, the one and the other, both: Whatever article or preposition may be

employed with *uno*, must be repeated with *altro*:

I speak of both; *parlo dell'uno e dell'altro*.

I speak against the one and the other;

Parlo contro l'uno e contro l'altro.

L'uno e l'altro, in the nominative, may have the verb in the singular:

L'uno e l'altro merita considerazione;

Both the one and the other merit consideration.

8. *Nè l'uno nè l'altro*, neither the one nor the other, requires a negative particle when placed after a verb, but not when placed before: as,

Nè l'uno nè l'altro verrà,—non verrà nè l'uno nè l'altro; neither of them will come.

Non voglio nè l'uno nè l'altro;

I will have neither the one nor the other.

Non parlo nè dell'uno nè dell'altro;

I speak of neither of them.

For neither of them, *nè per l'uno nè per l'altro*.

9. *L'un l'altro*, each other, one another, is used accusatively only, with *altro* sometimes in the genitive, or governed by a preposition:

Eteocle e Polinice si uccisero l'un l'altro;

Eteocles and Polynices slew one another.

Agiscono l'un contro l'altro.

They act against each other;

Those two brothers distrust each other;
Quei due fratelli si diffidano l'un dell'altro.

10. *O l'uno o l'altro*, one or other; *per uno*, each; have no peculiarity to notice:

Prendete o l'uno o l'altro di questi libri, ma non tutti e due;

Take one or other of these books, but not both.

Ho promesso a questi facchini due lire per uno;

I have promised these porters two livres each.

In all these senses, *uno*, *altro*, vary their gender and number according to the substantives to which they may be referred:

I saw the Indians and the Americans; both are warlike;

Vidi gl' Indiani e gli Americani; gli uni e gli altri sono bellicosi.

I have received the tables and chairs, but I do not like either of them;

Ho ricevuto le tavole e le sedie, ma non mi piacciono nè le une nè le altre.

Inabile l'uno (masc.) *e l'altra* (fem.) *per età.*
 (referring to different sexes,)

Both of them unable from age.

LESSON XVII.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

CONTINUED.

Masc.	Fem.	
Alcuno, alcuni,	Alcuna, alcune,	<i>Some, any.</i>
Qualcheduno	Qualcheduna	} <i>Some one.</i> <i>Somebody.</i> <i>Any body.</i>
Qualcuno	Qualcuna	
Nessuno	Nessuna	} <i>Nobody.</i> <i>None.</i>
Nissuno	Nissuna	
Niuno	Niuna	
Veruno	Veruna	
Nullò	Nulla	
Nè pur un	Nè pur una	<i>Not one.</i>

INVARIABLE.

Qualche	<i>Some, any.</i>
Nulla }	<i>Nothing.</i>
Niente }	

All the above pronouns are confined to the singular number, excepting the first.

11. *Some one, some, any*, having reference to an antecedent which is collective, or expressive of plurality, are rendered by *qualcuno*, or *qualcheduno*, in the singular, or by *alcuno* in the plural, agreeing with the antecedent in gender:

Ho visitato gli uffiziali, e ne ho trovato qualcuno ferito;

I have visited the officers, and seen some of them wounded.

Have you any guides? I have some.

Avete delle guide? Ne ho qualcuna.

Did you see the merchants? I saw some of them.

Avete veduto i negozianti? Ne ho veduti alcuni.

12. The same pronouns are equally employed in connexion with a noun of plurality following them in the genitive:

Stava cogliendo alcuni, or qualcuni di questi rami;

I was gathering some of these branches.

Parlerò ad alcun de' vostri amici;

I shall speak to some one of your friends.

13. *Some, any*, coupled adjectively with a substantive of the same nature, are expressed by *qualche*, or *alcuno*;

Se sapete qualche, or alcuna novità;

If you know any news.

Prendete alcune pere, or qualche pera;

Take some pears.

See, in page 32, art. 20; page 69, end of art. 2, other modes of *some*, *any*.

14. *Nessuno, nissuno, niuno, veruno, nullo*, require the negative *non*, when they follow, but not when they precede the verb:

Nessuno mi conosce ; nobody knows me.

*Nessun campo fu mai tanto ubertoso quanto
il mio ;*

No field was ever so fertile as mine.

*Non conosco nessuno ; I do not know any
body.*

15. These pronouns necessarily take the signification of *any body, any*, in a negative sentence of any kind:

Del quale non rimase nullo figliuolo ;

Of whom not any child remained.

Senza recare profitto veruno ;

Without bringing any profit.

Immeritevole di ottener verun patto ;

Unworthy to obtain any compact.

16 The same pronouns used after a verb, without a negative, in phrases expressing something doubtful or conditional, signify *any body, any*:

Avete veduto nessuno ? have you seen any
body ?

17. *Nè pur uno*, placed after the verb, requires a negative, but not when before it: as,

Non abbiamo trovato nè pur uno de' vostri ;

We found not one of your friends.

Nè pur uno venne ; not one came.

18. *Niente* and *nulla* come under the same

rule with respect to the negative ; and as to their sense in conditional and doubtful expressions, without a negative :

Non so nulla ; I know not any thing.

Nulla mi fa sperare ; nothing makes me hope.

Se sapete nulla de' suoi affari ;

If you know any thing of his concerns.

Non ho ricevuto niente ;

I have not received any thing.

Volete nulla? will you have any thing?

Senza dir nulla? without saying any thing.

19. Adjectives following *niente* take *di* ;

Niente di buono nè di cattivo ;

Nothing good or bad.

20. *Nullo*, in the meaning of *null* or *void*, is a mere adjective, and makes in the plural *nulli*; *nulle*.

LESSON XVIII.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

CONTINUED.

Used in the Singular only.

Masc.	Fem.	
Ciascheduno	Ciascheduna	{ <i>Every one,</i> <i>Each, every.</i>
Ciascuno	Ciascuna	
Ognuno	Ognuna	{ <i>Every one,</i> <i>Every body.</i>

Taluno	Taluna	{ <i>Some one,</i> <i>Some body.</i>
Singular.	Plural.	
Tutto	Tutti, (m.)	} <i>All, whole.</i>
Tutta	Tutte, (f.)	
Quanto	Quanti, (m.)	{ <i>As much as,</i> <i>As many as.</i>
Quanta	Quante, (f.)	
Tanto	Tanti, (m.)	{ <i>So much,</i> <i>So many.</i>
Tanta	Tante, (f.)	
Altrettanto	Altrettanti, (m.)	{ <i>As many,</i> <i>As much.</i>
Altrettanta	Altrettante, (f.)	
Alquanto	Al quanti, (m.)	} <i>Some.</i>
Alquanta	Al quante, (f.)	

Of both Genders.

Qualsisia	Quali si siano	{ <i>Whatsoever,</i> <i>Any. . . .</i> <i>whatever.</i>
Qualsivoglia	Quali si vogliano	
Tale	Tali	<i>Such.</i>
Cotale	Cotali	<i>Such as.</i>
Altrettale	Altrettali	<i>Such other.</i>

Invariable.

Ogni		<i>Each, every.</i>
Chiunque	} - - -	{ <i>Whoever,</i> <i>Whosoever,</i> <i>Any person whatever.</i>
Chicchessia		
Chi che		
Checchessia	} - - -	{ <i>Whatever, whatsoever,</i> <i>Any thing whatever.</i>
Checchè		
Qualunque		<i>Whatever.</i>
Quantunque		<i>Whatsoever.</i>

21. *Tutto* is used as a pronoun, by itself, like *all*, in the sense of *every body*:

Tutti pensano così; all think thus.

Lo diceva a tutti; he said so to all.

2. It is used substantively, with and without the article, in the sense of *the whole, every thing*:

So il tutto; I know the whole.

Iddio conosce tutto; God knows every thing.

Farò di tutto per compiacervi;

I will do every thing to satisfy you.

3. It is used as an adjective with personal pronouns in the plural:

Tutti noi or *noi tutti*, *voi tutti*, *tutti loro*;

All of us, all of you, all of them.

4. In the singular it is joined with *ciò che*, *quel che*:

Ditemi tutto ciò che avete fatto;

Tell me all that you have done.

Tutto quel che fa è approvato;

All that he does is approved of.

Ecco tutto quel che so;

This is all that I know.

5. *Tutto*, like *all*, is used adjectively with substantives, having the article placed after it:

Tutto lo studio e tutte le opere;

All the study and all the works.

6. The article however may be dispensed with after *tutto*, as well as *all*, when so employed, in the sense of *the whole, the entire*:

Tutto giorno e tutta notte; all day and all night.

In tutto Corfù e in tutta Malta;

In all Corfu, and in all Malta.

Era tutta gioja; She was all joy.

7. *Tutto*, like *all*, is used in the sense of *quite, entirely*, with a participle or adjective, agreeing with it in gender and number:

Egli era tutto solo; he was all alone.

Ella era tutta pallida; she was all pale.

Egli è tutto mesto, ed ella tutta lieta;

He is all sad, and she all joyful.

8. *Tutto* has *quanto* joined with it by way of emphasis, to signify all without exception, every one of the persons or things in question:

Tutti quanti perirono;

Every one of them perished.

Ecco tutto quanto ne posseggo;

Here is every morsel I possess of it.

9. The conjunction *e* is put expletively after *tutti*, coupled with a numeral:

Tutti e tre; all three.

10. *Tutto* is employed in a variety of adverbial phrases: as,

Al tutto, del tutto; totally: *per tutto*; every where.

22. *Ciascuno*, each, every one, is abbreviated from *ciascheduno*, without any other distinction between them. When employed by itself it refers to persons only;

La regina licenziò ciascheduno;

The queen dismissed every one.

Comandò che ciascuno se n'andasse a casa.

He commanded that each should go away home.

It is applied adjectively both to persons and things:

Ciaschedun soldato; each soldier.

Ciascuna donna; each lady.

Ciascheduna cosa; each thing.

Ciascun prato; each meadow.

23. *Ogni* is applied properly to the singular only: *Ogni uomo*; every man. *Ogni giorno*; every day.

In the following expressions it seems to admit of exceptions in being applied to the plural; but *spazio di*, space of, is to be understood:

Every other day; *ogni due giorni*.

Every third day; *ogni tre giorni*.

Every fortnight; *ogni quindici giorni*.

24. *Ognuno*, *chiunque*, *chicchessia*, *chi che*, apply to persons, and are used substantively:

Every body praises him; *ognuno lo loda.*

I have spoken of you to all your sisters, and every one is pleased;

Ho parlato di voi a tutte le vostre sorelle, ed ognuna è contenta.

Whoever saw me may speak;

Chiunque mi vide può parlare.

Whoever he may be; *chiunque egli sia.*

Whoever you may be; *chi che voi siate.*

Do no harm to any person whatever;

Non fate male a chicchessia.

25. *Qualunque, qualsisia* or *qualsiasi, qualsivoglia* or *qualvogliasi*, are applied both to persons and things; they are more properly coupled with a substantive than used alone:

Any person whatever;

Qualsisia persona, qualunque persona, or qualsivoglia persona.

Whatever pain you feel is merited by your imprudence.

Qualunque pena voi provate è dovuta alla vostra imprudenza;

26. *Checchessia, checchè*, are used by themselves, without a substantive:

Checchè si faccia, e checchè si dica, e checchessia il suo disegno, nol curo;

Whatever he may do, and whatever he may say, and whatsoever be his design, I care not.

27. *Quantunque* is an indeclinable pronoun, much used by the early writers to signify *whatever, whatsoever, how much, how many*:

Tra quantunque leggiadre donne;

Amongst whatever graceful ladies.

Quantunque può natura; how much nature can.

This pronominal use of *quantunque* has become obsolete; and it is now employed only as a conjunction, signifying *however, although*.

28. *Tale*, by itself signifies *one, some*, an individual or individuals, known or unknown.

Tal rise che dopo picciol tempo pianse;

One laughed who after a little time wept.

Tale venne in figura del re di Francia, tale del re d' Inghilterra;

One came in the figure of the king of France,
one in that of the king of England.

Tali rifiutarono, tali acconsentirono;

Some refused, some consented.

2. *Tale* is used as a relative pronoun, having reference to some preceding statement:

Tale fu mia cruda sorte; such was my cruel lot.

3. It is often joined with another pronoun, and signifies *particular, same, or said*:

Quelle tali persone; those said persons.

Cotesti tali s'immaginano;

Such folks as those imagine.

Ricevere quel tale vocabolo in quella tale significazione;

To receive such particular word in such particular signification.

4. It answers to the English term *certain*, in phrases like the following:

Scrive che un tal medico;

He writes that a certain doctor.

5. *Tale quale*, coming together, signify identity or resemblance of any sort:

Tale quale ora mi vedete;

Precisely such as you now see me.

6. *Tale* is used adjectively, like *such*, in summary allusion to a particular thing, or in substitution of a name:

Oggi ho da fare tali e tali cose;

To-day I have to do such and such things.

Disse, Madonna tale, guardate;

He said, Mistress such a one, take heed.

7. It is used alone, having a substantive understood, such as *caso*, case; *affanno*, tribulation; *dolore*, affliction; something disastrous being always meant:

A tale sono giunto; to such (plight) I am brought.

29. *Cotale*, compounded of *tale* and the preposition *con*, is more specific or demonstrative than its primitive; it is frequently joined to *questo* and *quello*; and used adjectively:

Quel cotale uomo;

Such particular man, such a man as that.

Questi cotali sogni; such dreams as those.

2. It is used by itself with the article, in reference to persons:

Un cotale che lo tolse;

A certain person who took it.

30 *Altrettale*, compounded of *altro* and *tale*, is employed as correlative to *cotale*, and signifies *such other*, *the same number* or *quantity*;

Cotali sono morti, ed altrettali per morire;

So many persons are dead, and so many others about to die.

2. It is used adverbially to signify *likewise*.

31. *Taluno*, compounded of *tale* and *uno*, is used by itself in reference to persons:

Opporrà taluno; somebody will oppose.

Se a taluno sembrasse;

If it should appear to some one.

32. *Quanto*, in the plural, is used by itself as a pronoun in reference to persons, particularly in sentences of admiration:

Insultava a quante venivano;

He insulted as many (females) as came.

*Quanti sono felici, morti in fasce! quanti
sono miseri in ultima vecchiezza!*

How many are happy who died in infancy!
how many are miserable in old age!

2. It is used adjectively with substantives of any kind:

*Quante montagne ed acque, quanto mare,
quanti fiumi ci separano!*

How many mountains and waters, how much sea, how many rivers separate us!

3. It is employed by itself in the singular, having the substantive *tempo*, time, understood:

Quanto la vita mi durerà;

So long as my life shall last.

Quanto vi piace; as long as you please.

Quanto è che siete quà?

How long is it that you are here?

4. It is employed in like manner in the plural, with *di*, days, understood, and sometimes *anni*, years:

A quanti siamo del mese?

What day of the month is it?

33. *Tanto* is employed for the most part adjectively: as,

Tanto onor mi farà superbo ;

So much honor will make me proud.

2. It is used occasionally by itself in the plural, referring to persons :

Vi erano tanti che non posso nominarli tutti ;

There were so many that I cannot name them all.

3. It is used substantively to denote extent of any kind :

Se il cielo mi darà tanto di vita ;

If heaven shall give me so much of life.

4. Both *quanto* and *tanto* are employed adverbially, in a variety of significations.

5. The employment of them as correlatives in forming a comparison, is shown in page 42. art. 16.

34. *Alquanto*, some, compounded of *quanto* and the article, is used by itself in reference to persons :

Ne uccisero alquanti ; they slew some of them.

Di alquante dirò ; of some (females) I will say.

2. It is applied adjectively to things as well as persons :

Dopo alquanto spazio ; after some space.

L'industria di alquanti uomini ;
The industry of some men.

3. It is used adjectively in the singular, having a substantive understood, in the sense of a *small quantity or portion*:

Con alquanto di buon vino il riconfortò ;
With some good wine he refreshed him.

4. *Alquanto* is used adverbially to signify a *little while, somewhat*.

35. *Altrettanto*, compounded of *altro* and *tanto*, signifies *as many, as much*:

Cento cavalieri andarono di Firenze, e di Bologna altrettanti ;

A hundred knights went from Florence, and as many from Bologna.

Una donna di altrettanta età ;

A lady of corresponding age.

It is used adverbially to signify *as well, as much*:

Altri faranno altrettanto ;

Others will do just as much, just the same.

36. *Cotanto*, another compound of *tanto*, is used as a pronominal adjective, having something of greater force than its primitive:

Cotanta fu la sua afflizione che ne morì ;

Such was his affliction that he died of it.

Cotanto is also employed adverbially.

REMARKS.

Several pronouns in all languages are of varied use, being employed in different relations; so that, viewed under different aspects, they seem to belong to different classes, and particularly in Italian, which is so abundant in pronouns.

Besides the foregoing general divisions of them, some are distinguished by the denomination of *Distributive* or *Partitive*, when used to designate parts or portions in a distributive sentence, as in the following, which may serve to show that more pronouns are applicable to that use in Italian than in English:—

Degli uomini chi è avventurato, chi è misero; qual è buono, qual è malvagio; tal è troppo ardito, tal è troppo timido; uno piange, uno ride; altri ama, altri odia: questi di tutto è pago, quegli di tutto si lagna;—

Of men there are the fortunate and the unfortunate; part are good, part bad; several too daring, others too timid; one weeps, another laughs; some love, some hate; this is ever contented, that ever complaining.

LESSON XIX.

VERB.

1. A verb is a part of speech which signifies existing, acting, or sustaining an action: as,
Vivere, to live; *recare*, to bring;
Esser recato, to be brought.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERBS.

2. Verbs are therefore of three kinds; termed Active, Passive, and Neuter.

3. A verb active expresses something acted, which includes an agent and an object of the action. The agent is called the nominative, and the object is called the accusative of the verb: as,

Il maestro ammonisce l'allievo;

The master admonishes the pupil.

Il maestro, the master, is the agent and nominative; *l'allievo*, the pupil, is the object and accusative: *ammonisce*, admonishes, is the verb active, expressing the nature of the action.

4. A verb passive expresses the receiving or the suffering of some action, and also infers an agent that acts, and an object that is acted upon; but the object becomes the nominative of this verb, and the agent is put into the ablative, by a preposition: as,

L' allievo è ammonito dal maestro ;

The pupil is admonished by the master.

Thus an active is turned into a passive verb by making the object of action stand as the nominative instead of the agent.

5. A verb neuter expresses a state of being in which the subject of the verb is confined to the agent: as,

Dormire ; to sleep.

6. Active verbs are called transitive; and neuter verbs, intransitive; because in the former an action is transferred or passes over from the agent to an object, and in the latter there is not such a transfer or passing over of action. Every active verb admits the word *person* or *thing* to be placed after it in the accusative, as its object, but a neuter verb does not admit of either; by which difference it is easy to distinguish the one from the other: for instance, *to do*, and *to admonish*, are active verbs because we can say *to do a thing*, *to admonish a person*; whereas, *to sleep* is a neuter verb, because we cannot say *to sleep a person*, nor yet *to sleep a thing*.

7. In all languages; however, neuter verbs take the accusative of a noun of corresponding meaning with the verb: as,

Vivere una vita felice ; to live a happy life.

Ire un viaggio lungo ; to go a long journey.

8. When the agent or nominative to the verb is also the object of action, whether in a moral or physical sense, an accusative of the pronoun corresponding to the nominative is attached to the verb, which is then called a reflected verb: as,

Io mi pento; I repent myself.

Catone si uccise; Cato slew himself.

Both active and neuter verbs become reflected.

DIFFERENT PARTS OF A VERB.

9. Verbs are subject to greater variations of their form than any other part of speech, being inflected or modified so as to signify different moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

MOODS.

10. The moods are different modifications of the verb, by which its meaning is declared in different manners.

11. A verb has four moods; the indicative, the imperative, the subjunctive, and the infinitive.

12. The indicative serves to indicate its meaning directly and certainly:

Reco, I bring;

being a positive declaration, is in this mood.

13. The imperative serves to command or exhort: as,

Rechi ; let him bring.

14. The subjunctive is employed in cases of doubt, contingency, or uncertainty:

Recassi, I might bring,

conveys an idea of this sort, and is in the subjunctive.

15. The infinitive states the subject of the verb in an indefinite manner: as,

Recare ; to bring.

TENSES.

16. The tenses are modifications of the verb with regard to time, and to the completeness or incompleteness of what it signifies.

17. The indicative mood has five simple tenses, which are named the present tense, the imperfect, the preterite, the future, and the conditional.

18. It has the same number of compound tenses, called the compound of the present tense, etc.

SIMPLE TENSES.

19. PRESENT. *Reco*, I bring; shows the action to be going on at the moment.

IMPERFECT. *Recava*, I was bringing; represents a past act during its performance.

PRETERITE. *Recai*, I brought; denotes the act to be past and finished.

FUTURE. *Recherò*, I will bring; signifies an intention of acting at a future time.

CONDITIONAL. *Recherei*, I would or could bring; signifies the intent or practicability of acting hereafter in a specified case. (1)

COMPOUND TENSES.

20. COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT. *Ho recato*, I have brought; expresses an act recently completed, or at an indeterminate time, or period unfinished.

IMPERFECT. *Aveva recato*, I had brought; expresses an act completed at a time antecedent to some other time expressed by a preterite, or the compound of the present.

PRETERITE. *Ebbi recato*, I had brought; denotes the same as the imperfect, but more definitely as to time.

(1) According to rigid grammarians, this tense, *recherei*, belongs properly to the subjunctive or conditional mood; but the facility that is given to the learner by placing it next to the future of the indicative, to which it has so great an affinity, has induced many modern teachers to depart from grammatical rigour in that particular.

FUTURE. (1) *Avrò recato*, I shall have brought; denotes a future action antecedent to another action, to be performed after it.

CONDITIONAL. *Avrei recato*, I should, could have brought; signifies the intent or possibility of an act having been done some time ago in a specified case.

21. The other moods, by their nature, require fewer tenses: the imperative has only one simple tense; the subjunctive, two simple and two compound; the infinitive, one single and one compound.

22. Each tense has a singular and plural, corresponding to those numbers in nouns:

La donna canta, the woman sings; is in the singular number.

Le donne cantano, the women sing; is in the plural number.

23. Each number in a tense has three persons, corresponding to those of pronouns, and is governed in each of the three by some noun or pronoun, called the nominative to the verb, either expressed or understood:

(1) This tense is by some grammarians called the *Preterite of the Future*.

	Singular.	Plural.
First Pers.	{ <i>Io canto</i> , I sing,	<i>Noi cantiamo</i> We sing.
Second,	{ <i>Tu canti</i> , Thou singest.	<i>Voi cantate</i> , Yuo sing.
Third,	{ <i>Ella canta</i> , She sings,	<i>Elleno cantano</i> . They sing.

24. Nouns can stand as nominatives in the third person only: the first and second persons must necessarily have pronouns expressed or understood for theirs.

25. Verbs which are employed in the third person only are called impersonal verbs.

26. A verb has two other modifications, the gerund, (1) as *cantando*, singing; and participle, (2) as *cantato*, sung; which are both qualified, or determined in their meaning by verbs with which they are connected.

(1) The gerund in Italian sometimes performs the office of participle present, as, on the other hand, the participle present in English often performs that of gerund.

(2) Although the form of the Latin participle present has been preserved in Italian, the nature of that form has not been equally so; for the words in it have become entirely substantives or adjectives, (many of them are employed as both): for instance, *cantante*, does not express the participle *singing*; but the substantive *singer*; *amante*, does not express the participle *loving*, but the substantive *lover*. It has therefore been thought right not to burden this Grammar with a pedantic, useless, and erroneous addition of a participle present to every verb for the sake of a very few exceptions which have accidentally survived its general disuse.

27. The former suffers no variation in its form; but the latter varies its termination to express different numbers and genders like an adjective, and partakes of the nature of one in other respects.

Sing. { *Cantato*, masc. Plural, { *Cantati*, masc.
 { *Cantata*, fem. { *Cantate*, fem.

CONJUGATIONS.

28. In most languages verbs are divided into classes, termed conjugations, which are distinguished by difference of termination in the infinitive mood.

29. The Italian has three conjugations;

The first }
 second } ending in { are; *amare*, to love.
 third } { ere; *credere*, to believe.
 { ire; *sentire*, to hear.

30. All the inflexions of a verb are variations from the termination of its infinitive, which is considered to be its root or primitive form.

31. To conjugate a verb, is to inflect it through its several moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

32. Some parts of the conjugation of every verb are effected by the aid of two others, *avere*, to have, and *essere*, to be, which for that reason are called auxiliary verbs; and the tenses in which they are employed are called compound

tenses, in which they are associated with the participle of the verb conjugated.

33. These auxiliaries, therefore, entering into the formation of all verbs, are the first to be learnt.

34. The greater number of verbs being inflected uniformly, according to one model in their several conjugations, are called regular verbs; those that deviate in any way from the model established, are called irregular verbs.

35. The following tables exhibit all the inflexions of the several conjugations both of the regular and irregular verbs, by which every difficulty on this head will be removed.

AVERE, to have.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Avere,</i>	<i>to have.</i>
<i>Gerund,</i>	<i>Avendo,</i>	<i>having.</i>
<i>Participle,</i>	<i>Avuto,</i>	<i>had.</i>

Compound { *Present, Avere avuto, to have had.*
of the, { *Gerund, Avendo avuto, having had.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tense.—Present.

Singular.

<i>Io ho,</i>	<i>I have.</i>
<i>Tu hai,</i>	<i>thou hast.</i>

Egli } ha,
Ella }

he } has.
she }

Plural.

Noi abbiamo,

we have.

Voi avete,

you have.

Eglio } hanno,
Elleno }

they have.

Compound Tense.—Present.

Singular.

Io ho avuto,

I have had.

Tu hai avuto,

thou hast had.

Egli ha avuto,

he has had.

Plural.

Noi abbiamo avuto,

we have had.

Voi avete avuto,

you have had.

Eglio hanno avuto,

they have had.

Simple Tense.—Imperfect.

Singular.

Io aveva or avevo, (1)

I had.

Tu avevi,

thou hadst.

Egli aveva,

he had.

(1) Though the first person singular of this tense terminates both in *a* and in *o*, the termination in *a* is considered to be preferable.

Plural.

Noi avevamo,	<i>we had.</i>
Voi avevate,	<i>you had.</i>
Eglio avevano,	<i>they had.</i>

Compound Tense.—Imperfect.

Singular.

Io aveva avuto,	<i>I had had.</i>
Tu avevi avuto,	<i>thou hadst had.</i>
Egli aveva avuto,	<i>he had had.</i>

Plural.

Noi avevamo avuto,	<i>we had had.</i>
Voi avevate avuto,	<i>you had had.</i>
Eglio avevano avuto,	<i>they had had.</i>

Simple Tense.—Preterite.

Singular.

Io ebbi,	<i>I had.</i>
Tu avesti,	<i>thou hadst.</i>
Egli ebbe,	<i>he had.</i>

Plural.

Noi avemmo,	<i>we had.</i>
Voi aveste,	<i>you had.</i>
Eglio ebbero,	<i>they had.</i>

Compound Tense.—Preterite.

Singular.

Io ebbi avuto,	<i>I had had.</i>
Tu avesti avuto,	<i>thou hadst had.</i>
Egli ebbe avuto,	<i>he had had.</i>

Plural.

Noi avemmo avuto,	<i>we had had.</i>
Voi aveste avuto,	<i>you had had.</i>
Eglino ebbero avuto,	<i>they had had.</i>

Simple Tense.—Future.

Singular.

Io avrò,	<i>I shall or will have.</i>
Tu avrai,	
Egli avrà,	

Plural.

Noi avremo,
Voi avrete,
Eglino avranno,

Compound Tense.—Future.

Singular.

Io avrò avuto,	<i>I shall or will have had.</i>
Tu avrai avuto,	
Egli avrà avuto,	

Plural.

Noi avremo avuto,
 Voi avrete avuto,
 Egliino avranno avuto,

Simple Tense.—Conditional.

Singular.

Io avrei,	} <i>I should, could, would,</i> or <i>might have.</i>
Tu avresti,	
Egli avrebbe,	

Plural.

Noi avremmo,
 Voi avreste,
 Egliino avrebbero,

Compound Tense.—Conditional.

Singular.

Io avrei avuto,	} <i>I should, could, would,</i> or <i>might have had.</i>
Tu avresti avuto,	
Egli avrebbe avuto,	

Plural.

Noi avremmo avuto,
 Voi avreste avuto,
 Egliino avrebbero avuto,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

Abbi tu,	<i>have thou.</i>
Abbia } Egli,	<i>let him have,</i>
} Ella,	<i>let her have.</i>

Plural.

Abbiamo noi,	<i>let us have.</i>
Abbiate voi,	<i>have ye, or you.</i>
Abbiano } Eglino,	<i>let them have.</i>
} Elleno,	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Simple Tense.—Present

Singular.

Che io abbia,	<i>that I may have.</i>
Che tu abbi, or abbia, (1)	<i>that thou mayst have.</i>
Ch'egli abbia,	<i>that he may have.</i>

Plural.

Che noi abbiamo,	<i>that we may have.</i>
Che voi abbiate,	<i>that you may have.</i>
Ch'eglino abbiano,	<i>that they may have.</i>

Compound Tense.—Present.

Singular.

Che io abbia avuto,	<i>that I may have had.</i>
Che tu abbi avuto,	
Ch'egli abbia avuto,	

(1) *Abbi* is more elegant.

Plural.

Che noi abbiamo avuto,
 Che voi abbiate avuto,
 Ch'eglino abbiano avuto,

Simple Tense.—Imperfect.

Singular.

Che io avessi, { *that I had.*
 that I might, could, would,
 should have.

Che tu avessi,
 Ch'egli avesse,

Plural.

Che noi avessimo,
 Che voi aveste,
 Ch'eglino avessero,

Compound Tense.—Imperfect.

Singular.

Che io avessi avuto, { *that I had had.*
 that I might, could, would,
 should have had.

Che tu avessi avuto,
 Ch'egli avesse avuto,

Plural.

Che noi avessimo avuto,
 Che voi aveste avuto,
 Ch'eglino avessero avuto,

ESSERE, to be.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>Essere.</i>
<i>Gerund,</i>	<i>Essendo.</i>
<i>Participle,</i>	<i>Stato. (1)</i>

<i>Compound of the</i>	<i>Present, Essere stato, to have been.</i>
	<i>Gerund, Essendo stato, having been.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Simple Tense.—Present.

Singular.

<i>Io sono,</i>	<i>I am.</i>
<i>Tu sei,</i>	<i>thou art.</i>
<i>Egli è,</i>	<i>he is.</i>

Plural.

<i>Noi siamo,</i>	<i>we are.</i>
<i>Voi siete,</i>	<i>you are.</i>
<i>Eglino sono,</i>	<i>they are.</i>

Compound Tense.—Present.

Singular.

<i>Io sono stato,</i>	<i>I have been.</i>
<i>Tu sei stato,</i>	<i>thou hast been.</i>
<i>Egli è stato,</i>	<i>he has been.</i>

(1) *Stato* agrees in gender and number with the nominative: *Io* (a man) *sono stato*, *Io* (a woman) *sono stata*, *Noi* (men) *siamo stati*, *Noi* (women) *siamo state*.

Plural.

Noi siamo stati,	<i>we have been.</i>
Voi siete stati,	<i>you have been.</i>
Eglino sono stati,	<i>they have been.</i>

Simple Tense.—Imperfect.

Singular.

Io era, <i>or</i> ero,	<i>I was.</i>
Tu eri,	<i>thou wast.</i>
Egli era,	<i>he was.</i>

Plural.

Noi eravamo,	<i>we were.</i>
Voi eravate,	<i>you were.</i>
Eglino erano,	<i>they were.</i>

Compound Tense.—Imperfect.

Singular.

Io era stato,	<i>I had been.</i>
Tu eri stato,	<i>thou hadst been.</i>
Egli era stato,	<i>he had been.</i>

Plural.

Noi eravamo stati,	<i>we had been.</i>
Voi eravate stati,	<i>you had been.</i>
Eglino erano stati,	<i>they had been.</i>

Simple Tense.—Preterite.

Singular.

Io fui,	<i>I was.</i>
Tu fosti,	<i>thou wast.</i>
Egli fu,	<i>he was.</i>

Plural.

Noi fummo,	<i>we were.</i>
Voi foste,	<i>you were.</i>
Eglino furono,	<i>they were.</i>

Compound Tense.—Preterite.

Singular.

Io fui stato,	<i>I had been.</i>
Tu fosti stato,	<i>thou hadst been.</i>
Egli fu stato,	<i>he had been.</i>

Plural.

Noi fummo stati,	<i>we had been.</i>
Voi foste stati,	<i>you had been.</i>
Eglino furono stati,	<i>they had been.</i>

Simple Tense.—Future.

Singular.

Io sarò,	<i>I shall or will be.</i>
Tu sarai,	
Egli sarà,	

Plural.

Noi saremo,
 Voi sarete,
 Eglino saranno,

Compound Tense.—Future.

Singular.

Io sarò stato, *I shall or will have been.*
 Tu sarai stato,
 Egli sarà stato,

Plural.

Noi saremo stati,
 Voi sarete stati,
 Eglino saranno stati,

Simple Tense.—Conditional.

Singular:

Io sarei, { *I should, could, would, or*
 { *might be.*
 Tu saresti,
 Egli sarebbe,

Plural.

Noi saremmo,
 Voi sareste,
 Eglino sarebbero,

Compound Tense.—Conditional.

Singular.

Io sarei stato, } *I should, would, could, or*
 } *might have been.*

Tu saresti stato,

Egli sarebbe stato,

Plural.

Noi saremmo stati,

Voi sareste stati,

Eglino sarebbero stati,

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sii, or Sia tu, *be thou.*
 Sia egli, *let him be.*
 Siamo noi, *let us be.*
 Siate voi, *be ye or you.*
 Siano, or Sieno eglino, *let them be.*

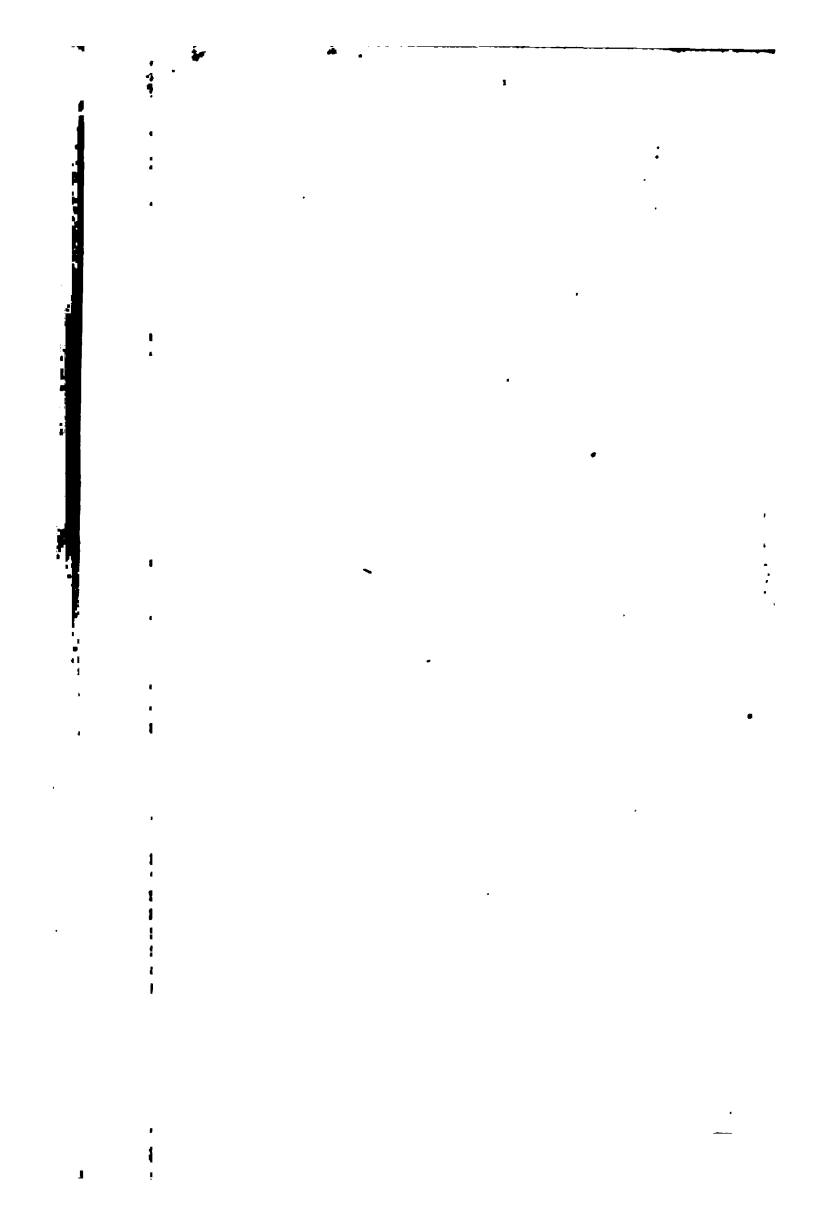
SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

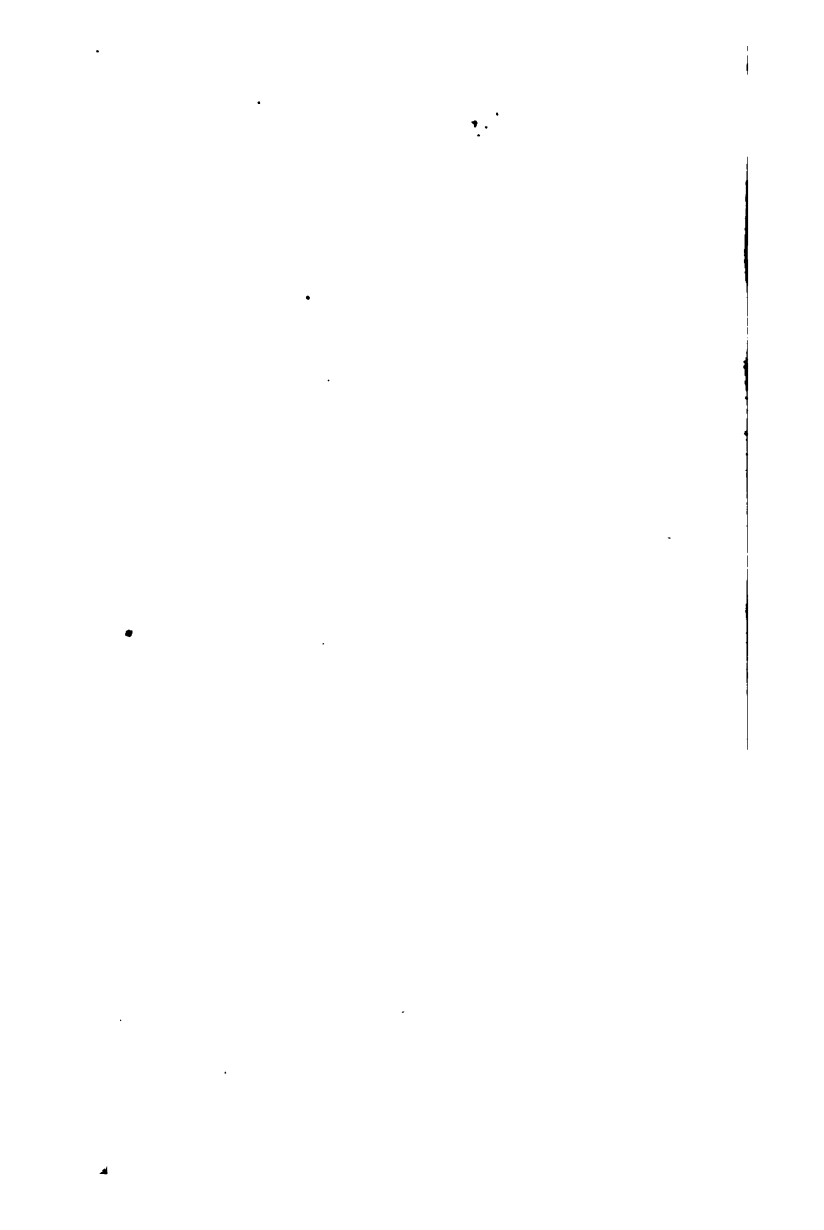
Simple Tense.—Present.

Singular.

Che io sia, *that I may be.*
 Che tu sii, or sia, (1) *that thou mayest be.*
 Ch' egli sia, *that he may be.*

(1) *Sii* is more elegant.





Compound Tense.—Imperfect.

Singular.

Che io fossi stato, { *that I had been; that I*
 should, could, would, or
 might have been.

Che tu fossi stato,
 Ch'egli fosse stato,

Plural.

Che noi fossimo stati,
 Che voi foste stati,
 Ch'eglino fossero stati.

EXPLANATIONS

Relating to the Tables of Irregular Verbs.

1. The letter R means regular, and denotes that the tense where it is placed is formed like the regular verbs: for instance, the R at the imperfect of the indicative mood of *andare*, signifying that tense to be so formed, the table of the regular inflexions will show it to be *andava, andavi, andava, andavamo, andavate, andavano*.

2. The letter *D* means defective: for instance, *solere* has no inflexions in several tenses so marked. When any part of a tense is defective, the part in use is specified; as, for instance, the third person singular of the indicative of *algere*, that verb having no other persons in that tense.

3. Most of these verbs have the preterite of the indicative irregular in the first person singular, with the third persons of both numbers formed from it; while the other three persons of that tense follow the regular manner of inflexion from the infinitive: example in *accendere*,—

Accesi, *accendesti*, *accese*, *accendemmo*, *accendeste*, *accesero*.

In other tenses, where the first person singular only is given, all the persons are derived from it according to the regular mode. This applies to each formation when there is more than one, as in *bevo*, *beo*, which have all the persons derived from both, *bevo*, *bevi*, etc. *beo*, *bei*, etc.

Any deviation from these general principles of inflexion is noted in the tables.

4. The compound verbs which differ from their primitives are mentioned; but not those which follow their primitives: for instance, *riandare* and *restare* are noticed as differing from

andare and *stare*; but *contraffare*, *disfare*, *rifare*, being conjugated like *fare* throughout, are not noticed.

5. Some verbs being wholly poetical, and some having received inflexions confined to poetry, these are distinguished by being printed in italics, as *caggio*, *Lucere*.

6. A considerable number of verbs have two terminations of their infinitive, and are in consequence inflected in two conjugations: for instance,

Applaudere, *applaudire*, to applaud:

The former is irregular and defective in the second conjugation; but is regularly inflected (in *isco*) in the third, in which it is most used.

Adempiere, *adempire*, to fulfil; *compiere*, *compire*, to complete; take the regular inflexions of the second conjugation, from the one termination, and of the third (in *isco*) from the other.

Amongst the verbs taking both forms of the third conjugation, it is to be observed that *sor-tire* has its inflexions in *isco* when it signifies *to chuse*, *elect*, or *share by lot*; and is inflected like *sentire*, when used in a military sense:

I nemici sortono sovente contro di noi;
The enemy frequently sally out against us.

Tossire, to cough:—its inflexions in *isco* prevail in conversation, and those in *io* in writing.

7. The irregular verbs of the second and third conjugations assume different modes of inflexion according to different combinations of their infinitive termination, some of these having several verbs belonging to them inflected differently from each other.

A view of the whole of these combinations is here given, with a corresponding verb of every variety of inflexion, by way of index to the following Tables.

TERMINATIONS OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Acere	<i>see</i> giacere	Emere	<i>see</i> premere
Adere	— } cadere	Empiere	— empiere
Aere } —	— invadere		— accendere
Arre } —	— radere	Endere	— } fendere
	— trarre		— prendere
Agnere	— fragnere		— rendere
Alere	— calere	Enere	— tenere
Algere	— algere	Erdere	— perdere
Andere	— spandere	Ere	— bere
Anere	— rimanere	Erere	— } cherere
Angere	—		— ferere
Agnere } —	— frangere	Ergere	— } aspergere
Apere	— sapere		— ergere
Ardere	— ardere		— mergere
Arere	— parere	Ernere	— scernere
Argere	— spargere	Erpere	— serpere
Atre	— trarre	Erre <i>see</i>	
Ascere	— } nascere	Egliere	
	— pascere	Ertere	— invertere
Audere	— applaudere	Ervere	— fervere
Ecere	— lecere	Escere	— } crescere
	— cedere		— mescere
Edere	— } ledere	Essere	— fessere
	— sedere		— connettere
	— vedere	Ettere	— } flettere
Eggere	— leggere		— genuflettere
Egliere } —	— scegliere		— mettere
Erre } —	— scerre		— riflettere
	— svellere	Iacere	— giacere
Egnere	— spegnere	Icere	— } elicere
	— divellere		— licere
Ellere	— } espellere	Idere	— } assidersi
	— svellere		— decidere

TERMINATIONS OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

SECOND CONJUGATION

CONTINUED.

Iedere	<i>see</i> {	chiedere fiedere riedere	Ondere	<i>see</i> {	ascondere fondere rispondere
Ierere	—	fierere	Orbere	—	assorbere
Igere	— {	dirigere esigere	Orcere	—	torcere
Iggere	—	figgere	Ordere	—	mordere
Imere	— {	comprimere dirimere esimere redimere	Orgere	—	porgere
Incere	—	vincere	Orre }	— {	porre ponere
Indere	—	scindere	Onere }		
Ingere }	— {	cingere	Orre <i>see</i>		
Ignere }	— {	stringere	Ogliere		
Inguere	—	distinguere	Orrere	—	correre
Iovere	—	piovere	Oscere	—	conoscere
Istere	—	assistere	Otere	—	potere
Ivere	— {	scrivere vivere	Overe	—	dovere
Odere	— {	godere rodere	Uadere	—	suadere
Ogere	—	arrogere	Ucere	— {	lucere rilucere
Ogliere }	— {	cogliere	Udere	—	alludere
Orre }	— {	corre	Uggere	— {	struggere suggere
Olcere	—	molcere	Ugnere <i>see</i>		
	— {	colere dolarsi solere volere	Ungere		
Olere	—	volgere	Ulgere	— {	fulgere mulgere rifulgere
Olgere	—	assolvere risolvere solvere volvere	Umere	—	assumere
Olvere	—	rompere	Ungere }	—	giungere
Ompere	—		Uguere }	— {	cuocere nuocere
			Uocere	—	scuotere
			Uotere	—	muovere
			Uovere	—	surgere
			Urgere	—	addarre
			Urre }	—	
			Ucere }	—	discutere
			Utere	—	

TERMINATIONS OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Alire	<i>see</i> salire	Ernire	<i>see</i> schernire
Ambire	— ambire	Ertire	— avvertire
Aprire	— aprire		dire
Ardire	— ardire	Ire	— { gire
Arire	— apparire		ire
Aurire	— esaurire	Olire	— olire
Eguire	— seguire	Ollire	— bollire
Ellire	— seppellire	Ompire	— compire
Empire	— empire	Oprire	— aprire
Enire	— venire	Orire	— morire
Entire	— { mentire	Struire	— { costruire
	pentirsi		costruire
Epire	— concepire	Udire	— udire
Erdire	— inverdire	Uggire	— { fuggire
	digerire		muggire
Erire	— { offerire	Uscire	— uscire
	perire		
	profferire		

IRREGULAR VERBS

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condi.
* ANDARE , to go.	vo or vado vai va andiamo andate vanno	a	a	andrò	andrei
DARE , to give.	do dai dà diamo date danno	a	detti or diedi desti dette or diede demmo deste dettero or diedero	darò	darei
FARE , to do.	fo or faccio fai fa, <i>face</i> facciamo fate fanno	faceva	feci facesti fece facemmo faceste fecero	farò	farei
† STARE , to stand. (1)	sto stai sta stiamo state stanno	a	stetti stesti stette stemmo steste stettero	starò	starei

* *Riandare*, to go again, is irregular, like *andare*. *Riandare*, to examine, is regular.

(1) *Note*. — The verb *stare*, is also used to express the place of abode, or habitation. — Exp: Where do you live? *Dove state voi?*

OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
vada vada vada andiamo andate vadano	vada vada vada andiamo andate vadano	R	R	R
dia dia dia diamo diate diano	dia dia dia diamo diate diano	dessi dessi desse dessimo deste dessero	R	R
faccia faccia faccia facciamo facciate facciano	faccia faccia faccia facciamo facciate facciano	facessi facessi facesse facessimo faceste facessero	facendo	fatto
stia stia stia stiamo stiate stiano or stieno	stia stia stia stiamo stiate stiano or stieno	stessi stessi stesse stessimo steste stessero	R	R

† *Ristare*, to stop, irregular, like *stare*. *Restare*, to remain, regular.

IRREGULAR VERBS

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
*ACCENDERE, <i>to kindle.</i>	a	a	accesi	a	a
ADDUCERE, †ADDUCERE, <i>to bring,</i> <i>to alledge.</i>	adduco	adduceva	addussi adducesti addusse adducemmo adduceste addussero	addurrò	addurrei
ALGERE, <i>to be chill.</i>	3d pers. <i>alge</i>	p	1st pers. sing. <i>alsi</i> 3d pers. sing. <i>alse</i>	D	D
ALLUDERE, <i>to allude.</i>	a	a	allusi	a	a
APPLAUDERE, <i>to applaud.</i>	a	a	2d p. sing. applaudesti 3d p. sing. applause 2d p. plur. applaudeste 3d p. plur. applausero	a	a
ARDERE, <i>to burn.</i>	a	a	arsi	a	a
ARROGERE, <i>to add.</i>	3d pers. sing. <i>arroge</i>	<i>arrogeva</i>	<i>arrosi</i>	D	D

* *Prendere, dipendere, propendere*, are regular, like *credere*; *impendere* also, its participle *impeso* and *impenduto* excepted. All other verbs of this termination, as *tendere, difendere*, etc. are irregular, like *accendere*.

OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
R	R	R	R	acceso
adduci	adduea	adducessi	adducendo	addotto
D	D	D	D	D
R	R	R	R	alluso
R	R	R	R	D
R	R	R	R	arso
D	D	D	R	arreto obs.

† The infinitive termination *ucere*, in this and other verbs, is obsolete, although most of their inflexions are derived from it.

IRREGULAR VERBS

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
*ACCENDERE, <i>to kindle.</i>	a	a	accesi	a	a
ADDUCERE, †ADDUCERE, <i>to bring,</i> <i>to alledge.</i>	adduco	adduceva	addussi adducesti addusse adducemmo adduceste addussero	addurrò	addurrei
ALGERE, <i>to be chill.</i>	3d pers. <i>alge</i>	p	1st pers. sing. <i>alsi</i> 3d pers. sing. <i>alse</i>	D	D
ALLUDERE, <i>to allude.</i>	a	a	allusi	a	a
APPLAUDERE, <i>to applaud.</i>	a	a	2d p. sing. applaudesti 3d p. sing. applause 2d p. plur. applaudeste 3d p. plur. applausero	a	a
ARDERE, <i>to burn.</i>	a	a	arsi	a	a
ARROGERE, <i>to add.</i>	3d pers. sing. <i>arroge</i>	arrogava	arrosi	D	D

* *Prendere, dipendere, propendere*, are regular, like *credere*; *impendere* also, its participle *impeso* and *impenduto* excepted. All other verbs of this termination, as *tendere, difendere*, etc. are irregular, like *accendere*.

OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
				acceso
adduci	adduca	adducessi	adducendo	addotto
				alluso
				arso
				arreto obs.

† The infinitive termination *ucere*, in this and other verbs, is obsolete, although most of their inflexions are derived from it.

Present of the Infinitive	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
ASCOSERE, <i>to hide.</i>	■	■	ascosi	■	■
ASPERGERE, <i>to sprinkle.</i>	■	■	aspersi	■	■
* ASSIDERSI, <i>to sit down.</i>	■	■	mi assisi	■	■
ASSISTERE, <i>to assist.</i>	■	■	■	■	■
ASSOLVERE, <i>to absolve.</i>	■	■	assolvei assolvetti or assolsi	■	■
ASSORBIRE, <i>to absorb.</i>	■	■	■	■	■
ASSUMERE, <i>to assume.</i>	■	■	assunsi	■	■
BEERE, or BEVERE, <i>to drink.</i>	bevo beo, poet.	beveva	bevvi, bevei, or bevetti	berò or beverò	berei or beverei
CADERE, <i>to fall.</i>	■ caggio, poet.	■	caddi	caderò or cadrò	caderei or cadrei
CALERE, <i>(impers.)</i> <i>to care.</i>	3d p. sing. cale	3dp. sing. caleva	3 p. sing. calse	3dp. sing. calerà or carrà	3dp. sing. calerebbe or carrebbe

* Except in the preterite and participle, *assidersi* is not used; but *sedere*.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
a	a	a	a	ascoso ascosto
a	a	a	a	asperso
a	a	a	a	assiso
a	a	a	a	assistito
a	a	a	a	assoluto assolto
a	a	a	a	assorto absorto
a	a	a	a	assunto
bevi be	beva bea, poet.	bevessi or becessi	bevendo	bevuto
a	a caggia, poet.	a	a caggendo poet.	a
3d p. sing. caglia	3d p. sing. caglia	3d p. sing. calesse	calendo	caluto

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
CEDERE , to yield.	A	A	cedei cedetti or cessi	A	A
CHERERE , to ask.	chero cheri chere 3d p. plur. cherono	D	D	D	D
*CHIEDERE , to ask.	A	A	chiasi	A	A
†CINGERE , to gird.	A	A	ciasi	A	A
COGLIERE , CORRERE , to gather.	colgo, coglio cogli coglie cogliamo cogliete colgono or cogliono	coglieva	colsi	coglierò or corro	coglierei or correi
COLERE , to worship.	1st p. sing. colo 3d p. sin. cola	D	D	D	D
COMPRIERE to compress.	A	A	compressi	A	A
**CONCERNERE ,	D	D	D	D	D
CONNETTERE , to connect.	A	A	connessi or connettei	A	A

* *Richiedere* has the participle *richieduto* and *richiesto*.

† For verbs ending in *tringere*, see *stringere*.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
A	A	A	A	ceduto cesso, <i>obs.</i>
D	D	D	D	D
A	A	A	A	chiesto
A	A	A	A	cinto
cogli cogla, coglia cogliamo cogliete cogliano, cogliano	colga, coglia colga, coglia colga, coglia cogliamo cogliate cogliano, cogliano	cogliessi	cogliendo	colto
D	D	D	D	D
A	A	A	A	compresso
D	D	D	D	conceptuto concelto
A	A	A	A	connesso

** *Conceptere* is antiquated : *conceptire*, which is regular like *finire*, is in use.

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
CONOSCERE, <i>to know.</i>	■	■	conobbi	■	■
CORRERE, <i>to run.</i>	■	■	corsi	■	■
CRESCERE, <i>to grow.</i>	■	■	crebbi	■	■
CUOCERE, <i>to cook</i>	cuoco cuoci cuoce cociamo coce cuocono	coceva	cossi cocesti cosse cocemmo coceste cossero	cocerò	cocerei
* DECIDERE, <i>to decide.</i>	■	■	decisi	■	■
DIRIGERE, <i>to direct.</i>	■	■	diressi	■	■
DIVIDERE, <i>to divide.</i>	■	■	■	■	■
DISCUTERE, <i>to discuss.</i>	■	■	discussi	■	■
DISTINGUERE, <i>to distinguish.</i>	■	■	distinsi	■	■

* *Striders*, to shriek, is regular.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
R	R	R	R	cono- sciuto
R	R	R	R	corso
R	R	R	R	cresciuto
cuoci cuoca cociamo cocete cuocano	cuoca cuoca cuoca cociamo cociale cuocano	cocessi	cocendo	cotto
R	R	R	R	deciso
R	R	R	R	diretto
R	R	R	R	D
R	R	R	R	discusso
R	R	R	R	distinto

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
DOVERE, <i>to owe.</i>	devo, debbo or deggio devi, dei deve, debbe, or dee dobbiamo, or deggiamo dovete devono, deb- bono; deggio- no, or deono	A	A	dovrò	dovrei
DOLEVERE, <i>to grieve.</i>	mi dolgo, or mi doglio ti duoli si duole ci doliamo, or dogliamo vi dolete si dolgono, or si dogliono	A	mi dolsi	mi dorrò	mi dorrei
ELICERE, (defective) <i>to draw.</i>	3d p. sing. <i>elice</i>	D	D	D	D
ESIGERE, <i>to exact.</i>	A	A	A	A	A
ESPELLERE, <i>to expel.</i>	A	A	espulsi	A	A
FENDERE, <i>to cleave.</i>	A	A	fendei <i>fessi</i> , poet.	A	A
FERVERE <i>to be hot.</i>	A	A	A	A	A
FIEDERE, <i>to strike.</i>	<i>fiedo</i> <i>fiedl</i> <i>fieds</i> 3d p. pl. <i>fie</i> <i>dono</i>	A	A	A	A

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
	debba, deva, deggia debba, deva, deggia debba, deva, deggia dobbiamo, deggiamo dobbiate, deggiate debbano, deggiano	a	a	a
duoliti dolgasi, dogliasi dogliamoci, dogliamoci doletevi dolgansi, dogliansi	mi dolga, mi doglia ti dolga, ti doglia si dolga, si doglia ci dogliamo, ci dogliamo vi dogliate, vi dogliate si dogliano, si dogliano	a	a	a
D	D	D	D	D
a	a	a	a	esatto
a	a	a	a	espulso
a	a	a	a	senduto, fesso post.
a	a	a	a	D
a	1st p. sing. fieda, or fieggia 3d p. sing. fieda 3d p. plu. fiedano	a	a	D

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
PIERERE, to strike.	3d p. sing. <i>fiere</i> 3d p. pl. <i>fieron</i>	D	D	D	D
FERERE, to strike.	<i>fero</i> <i>feri</i> <i>fero</i> 3d p. pl. <i>feron</i>	D	D	D	D
* FIGGERE, to drive in.	A	A	fissi or fisi	A	A
† FLETTERE, to bend.	D	D	D	D	D
** FONDERE, to melt.	A	A	fusi or fondei	A	A
STRANGERE, or FRANGERE, to break.	A	A	fransi	A	A
FULGERE, to shine.	A	A	fulsi	A	A
GENU- FLETTERE, to bend the knee.	A	A	genuflessi	A	A

* Other verbs ending in *iggere* make only *issi* in the preterite, *itto* in the participle: but *affiggere*, *crocifiggere*, *prefiggere* make their participle in *isso*.
† See *genufletters* and *rifletters*.

** Its compounds have only the irregular terminations *usi* in the preterite, and *uso* in the participle.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
D	D	D	D	D
3d p. sing. <i>fera</i> 3d p. plu. <i>ferano</i>	<i>fera</i> <i>fera</i> <i>fera</i> 3d p. plur. <i>ferano</i>	D	D	<i>feruto</i>
R	R	R	R	fisso fisso fiso
D	D	D	D	flesso
R	R	R	R	fuso fonduto
R	R	R	R	franto
R	R	R	R	D
R	R	R	R	genuflesso

§ *Angere*, to grieve, has no inflexion except *ango*, 3d pers. sing. of the Indicative, Present; and is confined to poetry.

|| *Circumfletters* and *infletters* follow *genufletters*: *rifletters* differs.

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
FIERERE, to strike.	3d p. sing. <i>fiere</i> 3d p. pl. <i>fierono</i>	D	D	D	D
FERERE, to strike.	<i>fero</i> <i>feri</i> <i>fere</i> 3d p. pl. <i>ferono</i>	D	D	D	D
* FIGGERE, to drive in.	A	A	fissi or fisi	A	A
† FLETTERE, to bend.	D	D	D	D	D
** FONDERE, to melt.	A	A	fusi or fondei	A	A
§ FRANGERE, or FRAGNE- RE, to break.	A	A	fransi	A	A
FULGERE, to shine.	A	A	fulsi	A	A
GENU- FLETTERE, to bend the knee.	A	A	genuflessi	A	A

* Other verbs ending in *iggere* make only *issi* in the preterite, *itto* in the participle: but *affiggere*, *crocifiggere*, *prefiggere* make their participle in *isso*.

† See *genuflettere* and *riflettere*.

** Its compounds have only the irregular terminations *usi* in the preterite, and *uso* in the participle.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
D	D	D	D	D
3d p. sing. <i>fera</i> 3d p. plu. <i>ferano</i>	<i>fera</i> <i>fera</i> <i>fera</i> 3d p. plur. <i>ferano</i>	D	D	<i>feruto</i>
R	R	R	R	<i>fitto</i> <i>fisso</i> <i>fiso</i>
D	D	D	D	<i>flesso</i>
R	R	R	R	<i>fuso</i> <i>fonduto</i>
R	R	R	R	<i>franto</i>
R	R	R	R	D
R	R	R	R	<i>genuflesso</i>

§ *Angere*, to grieve, has no inflexion except *ange*, 3d pers. sing. of the Indicative, Present; and is confined to poetry.

|| *Circonfletters* and *infletters* follow *genufletters*: *rifletters* differs.

Present of the Infinitive	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
GIACERE , <i>to lie down.</i>	giaccio giaci giace giacciamo giacete giacciono	a	giacqui	a	a
GODERE , <i>to enjoy.</i>	a	a	a	goderò or godrò	goderei or godrei
*GIUNGERE , GIUGNERE , <i>to arrive.</i>	a	a	giunsi	a	a
INVADERE , <i>to invade.</i>	a	a	invasi	a	a
LECERE , (obsolete) <i>to be lawful.</i>	3d p. sing. <i>lece</i> , (it is lawful)	D	D	D	D
LESERE , <i>to offend.</i>	a	a	lesi	a	a
LEGGERE , <i>to read.</i>	a	a	lessi	a	a
LICERE , <i>to be lawful.</i>	3d p. sing. <i>lice</i>	D	D	D	D
†LUCERE , <i>to shine.</i>	a	a	a	a	a
MESCERE , <i>to mix.</i>	a	a	a	a	a

* Verbs ending in *ungere* may transpose the *g* and *n*, when an *e* or an *i* follows: as, *giungere* or *giugnere*, *giunge* or *giugne*, *giungi* or *glugni*.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
giaci giaccia giacciamo giacete giacciano	giaccia giaccia giaccia giacciamo giacciate giacciano	R	R	giacinto : stato a giacere
R	R	R	R	R
R	R	R	R	giunto
R	R	R	R	invaso
D	D	D	D	lecito
R	R	R	R	leso
R	R	R	R	letto
D	D	D	D	licito, <i>obs.</i>
R	R	R	R	D
R	R	R	R	misto mesciuato

† *Rilucere* is employed in prose.

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
METTERE, <i>to put.</i>	a	a	misi, or mettei, } infre- messi } quent.	a	a
MOLCERE, <i>to assuage.</i>	2d p. sing. molci 3d p. molce	molceva molcevi molceva	D	D	D
MORDERE, <i>to bite.</i>	a	a	morsi	a	a
MUOVERE, <i>to move.</i>	muovo muovi muove moviamo movele muovono	moveva	mossi movesti mosse movemmo moveste mossero	muoverò	muoverai
NASCERE, <i>to be born.</i>	a	a	nacqui	a	a
NOCERE, <i>to hurt.</i>	nuoco, noccio nuoci nuoce nociamo, or nocciamo nocete nuocono, or nocciono, po.	noceva	nocqui nocesti nocque nocemmo noceste nocquero	nocerò	nocerei
PARERE, <i>to appear.</i>	pajo pari pare pajamo parete pajono	a	parvi, parsi, poet.	parrò	parrei
PASCERE, <i>to feed.</i>	a	a	a	a	a

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
a	a	a	a	messo
d	d	d	a	d
a	a	a	a	morso
nuovi nuova moviamo movele nuovano	nuova nuova nuova moviamo moviate nuovano	movessi	movendo	mosso
a	a	a	a	nato
nuoci nuoca, noccia nociamo, <i>nocclamo</i> nocete nuocano, <i>or</i> <i>nocclano</i> , poet.	nuoca, <i>noccia</i> nuoca, <i>noccia</i> nuoca, <i>noccia</i> ! nociamo, <i>nocclamo</i> nociate nuocano, <i>nocclano</i> , poet.	necessi	nocendo	nociuto
pari paja pajamo parete pajano	paja paja paja pajamo pajate pajano	a	a	paruto <i>parso</i> , poet.
a	a	a	a	pasciuto

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
RENDERE, <i>to restore.</i>	R	R	rendeì or rendetti resi	R	R
RIEDERE, <i>to return.</i>	riedo riedi riede 3d p. plur. riedono	D	D	D	D
RIFLETTERE, <i>to reflect.</i>	R	R	R	R	R
RIFULGERE, <i>to shine.</i>	R	R	rifulsi	R	R
RILUCERE, <i>to shine.</i>	R	R	rilussi or rilucei	R	R
REMANERE, <i>to remain.</i>	rimango rimani rimane rimaniamo rimanete rimangono	R	rimasi	rimarrò	rimarrei
RISOLVERE, <i>to resolve.</i>	R	R	risolvei or risolsi	R	R
RISPONDERE, <i>to answer.</i>	R	R	risposi	R	R
RODERE, <i>to gnaw.</i>	R	R	rosi	R	R
ROMPERE, <i>to break.</i>	R	R	ruppi	R	R

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particp.
	Present.	Imperf.		
R	R	R	R	reso renduto
riedi rieda 3d p. plu. riedano	rieda rieda rieda 3d p. plu. riedano	D	D	D
R	R	R	R	riflettuto rillesso
R	R	R	R	D
R	R	R	R	D
rimani rimanga rimaniamo rimanete rimangano	rimanga rimanga rimanga rimaniamo rimaniate rimangano	R	R	rimaso rimasto
R	R	R	R	risoluto
R	R	R	R	risposto
R	R	R	R	roso
R	R	R	R	rotto

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
SAPERE , <i>to know.</i>	so sai sa, sape sappiamo sapete sanno	a	seppi	saprò	saprei
SCEGLIERE , <i>or SCERRE</i> , <i>to choose.</i>	scelgo, sce- glio, poet. scegli sceglie scegliamo scegliete scelgono, or scegliono	sceglieva	scelsi	sceglirò, scarrò, poet.	sceglierei scarrei, poet.
SCERNERE , <i>to discern.</i>	a	a	acernei scersi, poet.	a	a
*SCINDERE , <i>to separate.</i>	a	a	scissi	a	a
SCRIVERE , <i>to write.</i>	a	a	scrissi	a	a
SCUTERE , <i>to shake.</i>	scuoto scuoti scuote scotiamo scotete scuotono	scoteva	scossi scotesti scosse scotemmo scoteste scossero	scoterò	scoterei
SEDERE , <i>to sit down.</i>	siedo, seggo or seggio siedi siede, siò sediamo, or stggiamo sedete siedono, seg- gono, or seg- giono	a	a	sederò sedrò	sederei sedrei

* *Prescindere* is regular; *discindere*, *rescindere* are irregular.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
sappi sappia sappiamo sappiate sappiano	sappia sappia sappia sappiamo sappiate sappiano	a	a	a
scegli sceglia, <i>sceglia</i> scegliamo scegliate sceglino, <i>sceglino</i>	sceglia, <i>sceglia</i> sceglia, <i>sceglia</i> sceglia, <i>sceglia</i> , post. scegliamo scegliate sceglino, <i>sceglino</i>	scegliessi	scegliendo	scelto
a	a	a	a	a
a	a	a	a	scisso
a	a	a	a	scritto
scuoti scuota scotiamo scotate scotano	scuota scuota scuota scotiamo scotate scotano	scotessi	scotendo	scosso
siedi sieda, <i>segga</i> sediamo, <i>seggi</i> sedete sedano, <i>seggano</i>	sieda, <i>segga</i> , <i>seggia</i> sieda, <i>segga</i> , <i>seggia</i> sieda, <i>segga</i> , <i>seggia</i> sediamo, <i>seggi</i> sediate, <i>seggi</i> sedano, <i>seggano</i>	a	a	a

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
SERPERE , to creep.	serpo serpi serpe 3p p. pl. serpono	serpeva serpevi serpeva 3d p. pl. serpevano	D	D	D
*SOLERE , to be wont.	soglio suoli suole, <i>sols</i> sogliamo, <i>so-</i> <i>lemo</i> , poet. solete sogliamo	R	D	D	D
SOLVERE , to loosen.	R	R	R	R	R
SPANDERE , to spread.	R	R	spandei or spandetti 1st p. sin. <i>spasi</i> 3d p. sing. <i>spase</i> , or <i>spanse</i> 3d p. plur. <i>spasero</i> , poet.	R	R
SPARGERE , to diffuse.	R	R	sparsi	R	R
SPEGNERE , to extinguish.	spengo, <i>spe-</i> <i>gno</i> , poet. spegni spegne spegniamo spegnete speggono	R	spensi	R	R
STRINGERE , STRINGERE , to bind.	R	R	stringai	R	R

* The simple tenses wanting, are supplied by participle and auxiliary: as, I was wont, *fui solito*; I shall be wont, *sarò solito*, etc.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
serpi serpa serpiamo serpano	serpa serpa serpa serpiamo 3d p. pl. serpano	D	D	R
D	soglia soglia soglia sogliamo sogliate sogliono	R	R	solito
R	R	R	R	soluto
R	R	R	R	spanduto spanto spaso, poet.
R	R	R	R	sparso sparto poet.
spegni spenga, spegna spegniamo spegnete spengano, spegnano, poet.	spenga, spegna spenga, spegna spenga, spegna, poet. spegniamo spegniate spengano, or spegnano	R	R	spento
R	R	R	R	stretto

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Conditional.
SERPERE, to creep.	serpo serpi serpe 3 ^d p. pl. serpono	serpeva serpevi serpeva 3 ^d p. serpe	ssi	a	a
*SOLERE, to be wont.	soglio suoli suole, sol sogliam teme sole sol	selleva	svelsi svellesti svelse svellemmo svellesti svelsero	svelterò	svelterei
SOLVERE, to loose.		a	suasi	a	a
ST	a	a	a	a	a
SUGGERE, to rise.	a	a	sursi	a	a
TENERE, to hold.	tengo tieni tiene teniamo tenele tengono	a	tenni	terrò	terrei
TORCERE, to weave.	a	a	a	a	a
TORCERE, to twist.	a	a	torsi	a	a

* *Disvegliare, disvellere, disverre, divagliare, diverre*, follow *svellere*: *convellere* makes the preterite *convellai*; the participle, *convulso*; in other parts it is regular.

	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
		a	a	strutto
svella, sveiga svella, sveiga svella, sveiga svelliamo svelliate svellano, svelgano	svellessi	sveffendo	svelto	
a	a	a	a	susso
a	a	a	a	a
a	a	a	a	sutto
tieni tenga teniamo tenete tengano	tenga tenga tenga teniamo teniate tengano	a	a	a
a	a	a	a	tessuto tetto post.
a	a	a	a	tetto

† *Sergere follows porgere.*

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
STRUGGERE, <i>to melt.</i>	strussi	strussi	strussi	strussi	strussi
*SVELLERE, SVERRERE, SVEGLIERE, <i>to pluck out.</i>	svello, svelgo svelli svelle svegliamo svellete svellono, svelgono, or svegliano	svelleva	svelsi svellesti svelse svellemmo svellesti svelsero	svellero	svellerei
SUADERE, <i>to persuade.</i>	suasi	suasi	suasi	suasi	suasi
†SUGGERE, <i>to suck.</i>	suggeri	suggeri	suggeri	suggeri	suggeri
SUGGERE, <i>to rise.</i>	sursi	sursi	sursi	sursi	sursi
TEDERE, <i>to hold.</i>	tengo tieni tiene teniamo tenete tengono	teneva	tenni	terrò	terrei
TESSERE, <i>to weave.</i>	tesi	tesi	tesi	tesi	tesi
TORCERE, <i>to twist.</i>	torsi	torsi	torsi	torsi	torsi

* *Disvegliere, disvellere, disverre, divegliere, diverre*, follow *svellere*: *convellere* makes the preterite *convellci*; the participle, *convulso*; in other parts it is regular.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
a	a	a	a	strutto
svelli svella, svelga svelliamo svellite svellano, svelgano	svella, svelga svella, svelga svella, svelga svelliamo svellite svellano, svelgano	svellessi	svellendo	svolto
a	a	a	a	suaso
a	a	a	a	a
a	a	a	a	stutto
tieni tenga teniamo tenete tengano	tenga tenga tenga teniamo tenete tengano	a	a	a
a	a	a	a	tessuto tetto poet.
a	a	a	a	storto

† *Sorgere* follows *porgere*.

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
STRUGGERE, <i>to melt.</i>	<i>struggo</i>	<i>struggo</i>	<i>strussi</i>	<i>struggerò</i>	<i>struggerei</i>
*SVELLERE, SVERRE, SVEGLIERE, <i>to pluck out.</i>	<i>svello, svelgo</i> <i>svelli</i> <i>svello</i> <i>svegliamo</i> <i>svellete</i> <i>svellono,</i> <i>svelgono, or</i> <i>svegliano</i>	<i>svelleva</i>	<i>svelsi</i> <i>svellesti</i> <i>svelse</i> <i>svellemmo</i> <i>svellesti</i> <i>svelsero</i>	<i>svellero</i>	<i>svellerei</i>
SUADERE, <i>to persuade.</i>	<i>suado</i>	<i>suado</i>	<i>suasi</i>	<i>suaderò</i>	<i>suaderei</i>
†SUGGERE, <i>to suck.</i>	<i>suggero</i>	<i>suggero</i>	<i>suggero</i>	<i>suggerò</i>	<i>suggererei</i>
SUGGERE, <i>to rise.</i>	<i>surgere</i>	<i>surgere</i>	<i>sursi</i>	<i>surgere</i>	<i>surgere</i>
TENERE, <i>to hold.</i>	<i>tengo</i> <i>tieni</i> <i>teno</i> <i>teniamo</i> <i>teneate</i> <i>tengono</i>	<i>teneva</i>	<i>tenni</i>	<i>terrò</i>	<i>terrei</i>
TESSERE, <i>to weave.</i>	<i>tesso</i>	<i>tesso</i>	<i>tesi</i>	<i>teggerò</i>	<i>teggerai</i>
TORCERE, <i>to twist.</i>	<i>torco</i>	<i>torco</i>	<i>torsi</i>	<i>torcerò</i>	<i>torcerei</i>

* *Disvegliare, disvellere, disverre, divogliere, diverre*, follow *svellere*: *convellere* makes the preterite *convellai*; the participle, *convulso*; in other parts it is regular.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
a	a	a	a	strutto
svelli svella, svelga svelliamo svellite svellano, svelgano	svella, svelga svella, svelga svella, svelga svelliamo svellite svellano, svelgano	svellessi	svellendo	svelto
a	a	a	a	suaso
a	a	a	a	d
a	a	a	a	surto
tieni tenga teniamo tenete tengano	tenga tenga tenga teniamo teniate tengano	a	a	a
a	a	a	a	tessuto tetto poet.
a	a	a	a	torto

† *Sorgere* follows *porgere*.

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
STRUGGERE, <i>to melt.</i>	struggo	struggevo	strussi	struggerò	struggerei
*SVELLERE, SVERRE, SVEGLIERE, <i>to pluck out.</i>	svello, svelgo svelli svelle svegliamo svellete svellono, svelgono, or svegliano	svelleva	svelsi svellesti svelse svellemmo svellesteste svelsero	svellerrò	svellerei
SUADERE, <i>to persuade.</i>	suado	suadevo	suasi	suaderò	suaderei
†SUGGERE, <i>to suck.</i>	suggero	suggerivo	suggerii	suggerirò	suggerirei
SUGGERE, <i>to rise.</i>	surgere	surgere	sursi	surgere	surgere
TEPERE, <i>to hold.</i>	tengo tieni tiene teniamo tenete tengono	tenevo	tenni	terrò	terrei
TESSERE, <i>to weave.</i>	tesso	tegevo	tegei	teggerò	tegeerei
TORCERE, <i>to twist.</i>	torco	torcevo	torsi	torcerò	torcerei

* *Disvegliere, disvellere, disverre, divegliere, diverre*, follow *svellere*: *convellere* makes the preterite *convellai*; the participle, *convulso*; in other parts it is regular.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
a	a	a	a	strutto
svelli svella, svelga svelliamo svellite svellano, svelgano	svella, svelga svella, svelga svella, svelga svelliamo svelliate svellano, svelgano	svellessi	svellendo	svelto
a	a	a	a	suaso
a	a	a	a	D
a	a	a	a	surto
tieni tenga teniamo tenete tengano	tenga tenga tenga teniamo teniate tengano	a	a	a
a	a	a	a	tessuto tetto poet.
a	a	a	a	storta

† *Sorgere* follows *porgere*.

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
STRUGGERE, <i>to melt.</i>	a	a	strussi	a	a
*SVELLERE, SVERRE, SVEGLIERE, <i>to pluck out.</i>	svello, svelgo svelli svelle svegliamo svellete svellono, svelgono, or svegliano	svellava	svelsi svellesti svelse svellemmo svellesti svelsero	svellerò	svellerei
SUADERE, <i>to persuade.</i>	a	a	suasi	a	a
†SUGGERE, <i>to suck.</i>	a	a	a	a	a
SUGGERE, <i>to rise.</i>	a	a	sursi	a	a
TERERE, <i>to hold.</i>	tengo tieni tiene teniamo tenele tengono	a	tenni	terrò	terrei
TESSERE, <i>to weave.</i>	a	a	a	a	a
TORCERE, <i>to twist.</i>	a	a	torsi	a	a

* *Disvegliere, disvellere, disverre, divegliere, diserre*, follow *svellere*: *convellere* makes the preterite *convellci*; the participle, *convulso*; in other parts it is regular.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
a	a	a	a	strutto
svelli svello, svelga svelliamo svellete svellano, svelgano	svella, svelga svella, svelga svella, svelga svelliamo svelliate svellano, svelgano	svellessi	svellendo	svelto
a	a	a	a	suaso
a	a	a	a	D
a	a	a	a	surto
tieni tenga teniamo tenete tengano	tenga tenga tenga teniamo teniate tengano	a	a	a
a	a	a	a	tessuto testo poet.
a	a	a	a	toro

† *Sorgere* follows *porgere*.

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
TRARRE, TRAERE, <i>to draw.</i>	traggo trai, traggi trac, tragge trajamo, traggiamo traete traggono, tranno	traeva	trassi traesti trasse traemmo traeste trassero	trarò	trarrei
VALERE, <i>to be worth.</i>	valgo, vaglio vali vale valiamo valet valgono, vagliano	a	valsi	varrò	varrei
*VEDERE, <i>to see.</i>	vedo, veggio, or veggio vedi, ve' vede vediamo, veggiamo vedete vedono, veg- gono, veg- giono	a	vidi	vedrò	vedrei
VINCERE, <i>to vanquish.</i>	a	a	vinsi	a	a
VIVERE, <i>to live.</i>	a	a	vissi	viverò or vivrò	viverei or vivrei

* *Antivedere, avvedere, rivedere* make the future in *drò*, the conditional in *drei*: the other compounds of *vedere*, in *arò*, *arei*.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
trai, traggi tragga traggiamo traete traggano	tragga tragga tragga traggiamo traggiate traggano	traessi	traendo	tratto
vali valga, vaglia valiamo valetе valgano, vagliano	valga, vaglia valga, vaglia valga, vaglia valiamo valiate valgano, vagliano	a	a	valuto <i>valso</i> , post.
vedi, ve' veda, vegga, veggia vediamo, veggiamo vedete vedano, veggano, veg- giano	veda, vegga, veggia veda, vegga, veggia veda, vegga, veggia vediamo, veggiamo vediate, veggiate vedano, veggano, veg- giano	a	vedendo veggendo	veduto visto
a	a	a	a	vinto
a	a	a	a	vivuto vissuto

Present of the Infinitive	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
*VOLERE, <i>to be willing.</i>	voglio, vo' vuoi, vuo' or vuoi vuole vogliamo volete vogliono	a	volli <i>volai</i>	vorro	vorrei
VOLGERE, <i>to turn.</i>	a	a	volai	a	a
†VOLVERE, <i>to turn.</i>	a	a	a	a	a

* *Volai* is the proper preterite of *volgere*; but has been sometimes used in poetry for that of *volere*.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
D	voglia voglia voglia vogliamo vogliate vogliano	R	R	R
R	R	R	R	volto
R	R	R	R	volto

† *Involvere*, *devolvere*, make the participle *involuta*, *devoluta*: *riolvere*, *svolvere*, *travolvere*, make *riolto*, *svolto*, *travolto*.

IRREGULAR VERBS

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
APPARIRE, <i>to appear.</i>	apparisco apparisci apparisce, appare appariamo apparite appariscono, appaiono	R	apparui apparui or apparui	R	R
APRIRE, <i>to open.</i>	apro	R	aprii or appersi	R	R
*ARDERE, <i>to dare.</i>	ardisco ardisci ardisce D ardite ardiscono	R	R	R	R
AVVERTIRE, <i>to warn.</i>	avverto, avvertisco	R	R	R	R
BOLLIRE, <i>to boil.</i>	bollo bolli bolle bolliamo bollite bollono	R	R	R	R
CONVERTIRE, <i>to convert.</i>	converto, convertisco	R	convertii or conversi	R	R

* The deficiencies of *ardere* may be supplied by *osare*, or *avere ardimento*: as, *noi osiamo*, or *abbiamo ardimento*, we dare. *Ardiamo*, *ardiate*, *ardendo*, *ardente*, belong to *ardere*, to burn.

OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
apparisci apparisca , appaja appariamo apparite appariscano , appajano	apparisca , appaja apparisca apparisca , appaja appariamo appariate appariscano , appajano	R	R	apparito apparso
apri	apra	R	R	aperto
ardisci ardisca D arдите ardiscano	ardisca ardisca ardisca D D ardiscano	R	D	R
avverti , avvertisci	avverta , avvertisca	R	R	R
bolli bolla bogliamo bollite bollano	bolla bolla bolla bogliamo bogliate bollano	R	R	R
converti , convertisci	converta , convertisca	R	R	convertito converso

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
CONSTRUIRE , or * COSTRUIRE , to construct.	costruisco or costruisco	■	costruii costruii costrussi costrussi	■	■
DIRE , to say.	dico dici, di' dice diciamo dite dicono	diceva	disi dicesti disse dicemmo diceste dissero	dirò	direi
DIGERIRE , to digest.	digestisco	■	■	■	■
† EMPLERE , to fill.	■	empiva	empii	empirò	empirei
ESAURIRE , to exhaust.	esaurisco	■	■	■	■
FUGGIRE , to flee.	fuggo	■	■	■	■
** IRE , to go.	1st p. pl. giamo 2d p. pl. gite	■	■	■	■
IRE , to go.	2d p. pl. ite	1st p. sin. iva 3d p. sin. iva 3d p. pl. ivano	2d p. sin. isti 3d p. pl. iro, ir	1st p. pl. iremo 2d p. pl. irete 3p p. pl. iranno	3d p. pl. iriano

* *Costruire, istruire* are preferred to *costruire, instruire*.

† *Emplere*, to fill; *riempire*, to refill; are both regularly declined in the second conjugation.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
costruisci costruisci	costruisca costruisca	a	a	costruito costruito costrutto costrutto
di' dica diciamo dite dicano	dica dica dica diciamo diciate dicano	dicessi	dicendo	detto ditto, poet.
digerisci	digerisca	a	a	digerito digesto
a	a	empissi	a	empito
esaurisci	esaurisca	a	a	esaurito esauisto
fuggi	fugga	a	a	a
1st p. pl. giamo 2d p. pl. gite	1st p. pl. giamo 2d p. pl. giate	a	D	a
2d p. pl. ite	D	D	D	ito

** Gire, where defective, may be supplied by andare.

Present of the Infinitive.	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
MORIRE , to die.	muoro, muo- jo muori muore muoriamo, muojamo morite muorono, muojono	R	R	morirò or morirò	morrei or morirei
MUGGIRE , to bellow.	muggisco muggo, poet.	R	R	R	R
OFFERIRE , or OFFRIRE , to offer.	offerisco, of- fro	offeriva or offriva	offerii offrii or offersi	offerirò or offrirò	offerirei or offrirei
OLIRE , to smell sweet.	D	oliva olivi oliva 3d p. pl. olivano	D	D	D
PROFFERIRE , to utter.	profferisco	R	profferii or proffersi	R	R
SALIRE , to go up. to ascend.	salgo, salisco sali, salisci sale, salisce sagliamo * salite salgono, sa- liscono	R	salii or salsi	R	R
SCHERNIRE , to deride.	schernisco, scherno	R	R	R	R

* *Sagliamo*, being an inflexion of *salare*, to salt, is used for *sagliamo*, improperly.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
muori muora, muoja moriamo, muojamo morite muorano, muojano	muora, muoja muora, muoja muora, muoja moriamo, muojamo moriate, muojate muorano, muojano	R	R	morio
muggisci <i>muggi</i> , poet.	muggisca <i>mugga</i> , poet.	R	R	R
offerisci, offri	offerisca, offra	offerissi offerissi	offerendo offerendo	offerito
D	D	D	D	D
proferisci	profferisca	R	R	profferito profferito
sali, salisci salga, salisca sagliamo salite salgano, saliscano	salga, salista salga, salista salga, salista sagliamo sagliate salgano, saliscano	R	R	P.
schernisci, scherni	schernisca, scherna	R	R	R

Present of the Infinitive	Indicative Mood.				
	Present.	Imperf.	Preterite.	Future.	Condit.
* SEGUIRE, <i>to follow.</i>	seguo, sieguo segui, siegui segue, siegue seguiamo seguite seguono, sie- guono	R	R	R	R
SEPPELLIRE, <i>to bury.</i>	seppelisco	R	R	R	R
UDIRE, <i>to hear.</i>	odo odi ode udiamo udite odono	R	R	R	R
VENIRE, <i>to come.</i>	vengo, vegno vieni viene veniamo venite vengono, ve- gnono, poet.	R	venni	verrò	verrei
USCIRE, <i>to go out.</i>	esco esci esce usciamo uscite escono	R	R	R	R

* Its compounds, *conseguire*, etc. are conjugated both irregularly, like *seguire*, and regularly, like *finire*: this latter modes is preferable.

Imperative.	Subjunctive Mood.		Gerund.	Particip.
	Present.	Imperf.		
seguì, sieguiti segua, siegua seguiamo seguite seguano, sieguano	segua, siegua segua, siegua segua, siegua seguiamo seguiate seguano, sieguano	 	 	
seppellisci	seppellisca	 	 	seppellito sepolto <i>sepulto, poet.</i>
odi oda udiamo udite odano	oda oda oda udiamo udiate odano	 	 	
viene venga, vegna veniamo, vengano venite vengano, vengano poet.	venga, vegna venga, vegna venga, vegna veniamo, vengano veniate, vengate vengano, vengano poet.	 	 	
esci esca usciamo uscite escano	esca esca esca usciamo uscite escano	 	 	

IRREGULAR VERBS

OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Those verbs, though numerous, as the foregoing tables have shown, may be considerably reduced as to variety, by observing that, amongst many of them, there is uniformity in their irregularity, so that they may be classed according to rules; of which the most general are these four.

I. Such of them as have the first person of the indicative present in *ggo*, change the *gg* into *ss* in the preterite, and into *tt* in the participle, as in the following:—

Present Tense.	Preterite.	Participle.
Traggo	trassi	tratto
Eleggo	elessi	eletto
Reggo	ressi	retto
Affliggo	affissi	afflitto
Configgo	confissi	confitto
Trafiggo	trafissi	trafitto
Struggo	strussi	strutto
Distruggo	distrussi	distrutto

Some few deviate a little from this uniformity.

Figgo	fissi	fitto, and <i>fisso</i>
Afiggo	affissi	affisso

The following, though not exactly constructed like the preceding, preserve the analogy of their mode of variation:—

Present Tense.	Preterite.	Participle.
Dico	dissi	detto
Cuoco	cossi	cotto
Adduco	addussi	addotto
Conduco	condussi	condotto
Induco	indussi	indotto
Introduco	introdussi	introdotto
Riduco	ridussi	ridotto
Scrivo	scrissi	scritto
Imprimo	impressi	impresso
Esprimo	espressi	espresso
Opprimo	oppressi	oppresso
Reprimo	repressi	represso
Muovo	mossi	mosso
Scuoto	scossi	scosso
Riscuoto	riscossi	riscosso
Percuoto	percossi	percosso
Concedo	concessi	{ concesso, and conceduto
Vivo	vissi	{ vissuto, and vivuto

II. Such verbs as have the first persons of the indicative present in *do*, (with a vowel before *d*,) make the preterite in *si*, and the participle in *so*:—

Present Tense.	Preterite.	Participle.
Persuado	persuasi	persuaso
Assido	assisi	assiso
Conquido	conquisi	conquiso
Divido	divisi	diviso
Recido	recisi	reciso
Uccido	uccisi	ucciso
Rido	risi	riso
Rodo	rosi	roso
Chiudo	chiusi	chiuso
Intrudo	intrusi	intruso

Deviation in the Participle.

Chiedo	chiesi	<i>chiesto</i>
--------	--------	----------------

III. Those which have the first person of that tense in *endo*, make the preterite in *si*, and the participle in *so*, dropping the *n*.—

Present Tense.	Preterite.	Participle.
Accendo	accesi	acceso
Ascendo	ascesi	asceso
Apprendo	appresi	appreso
Tendo	tesi	teso
Stendo	stesi	steso
Attendo	attesi	atteso
Contendo	contesi	conteso
Intendo	intesi	inteso
Difendo	difesi	difeso
Offendo	offesi	offeso

Present Tense.	Preterite.	Participle.
Spendo	spesi	speso
Sospendo	sospesi	sospeso
Prendo	presi	preso
Riprendo	ripresi	ripreso
Spando	spasi	spaso, and spanto

Those in *ondo* have the same formations, with little difference:—

Present Tense.	Preterite.	Participle.
Fondo	fusi	fuso
Rifondo	rifusi	rifuso
Profondo	profusi	profuso
Confondo	confusi	confuso

Deviations in the Participle.

Nascondo	nascosi	{ nascoso, and nascosto
Rispondo	risposi	risposto

The following may be added as analogous:—

Pongo	posi	posto
Metto	misi	messo
Prometto	promisi	promesso
Commetto	commisi	commesso

So other compounds of *metto*: *ammetto, dimetto, frammetto, intrometto, permetto, rimetto, scommetto, sprometto, trasmetto, etc.*

IV. Verbs having one of these three liquids, *l, n, r*, before the last syllable in that person and tense, make the preterite in *si*, and the participle in *to*, retaining such liquid :—

Present Tense.	Preterite.	Participle.
Scelgo	scelsi	scelto
Divelgo	divelsi	divelto
Colgo	colsi	colto
Sciolgo	sciolsi	sciolto
Tolgo	tolsi	tolto
Volgo	volsi	volto
Rivolgo	rivolsi	rivolto
Frango	fransi	franto
Piango	piansi	pianto
Spengo	spensi	spento
Cingo	cinsi	cinto
Dipingo	dipinsi	dipinto
Fingo	finsi	finto
Spingo	spinsi	spinto
Sospingo	sospinsi	sospinto
Tingo	tinsi	tinto
Distinguo	distinsi	distinto
Estinguo	estinsi	estinto
Giungo	giunsi	giunto
Ungo	unsi	unto
Mungo	munsi	munto
Pungo	punsi	punto

Some few in *mo* take this formation:—

Consumo	consunsi	consunto
Presumo	presunsi	presunto

So *assumo*, *desumo*, *riassumo*.

Present Tense.	Preterite.	Participle
Torco	torsi	torto
Accorgo	accorsi	accorto
Scorgo	scorsi	scorto
Porgo	porsi	porto
Sorgo	sorsi	sorto
Surgo	sursi	surto

The following are exceptions with regard to the participle:—

Ardo	arsi	arso
Mordo	morsi	morso
Spargo	sparsi	sperso
Aspergo	aspersi	asperso
Corro	corsi	corso
Ricorro	ricorsi	ricorso
Stringo	strinsi	stretto
Dolgo	dolsi	doluto
Perdo <i>has</i>	{ persi perdei	perso <i>and</i> perduto

(which two last are preferable.)

Exceptions both in preterite and participle:—

Rimango	rimasi	rimasto
---------	--------	---------

Pongo	posi	posto
-------	------	-------

Tengo	tenni	tenuto
-------	-------	--------

(and their compounds in like manner.)

Other variations of those verbs being rather peculiar than general, any reduction of them to rules would require much minuteness, and appear too complicated to be of adequate benefit: the student may therefore be referred to the Tables where they are exposed, and to use, as the better mode of becoming familiar with them.

LESSON XIX

CONTINUED.

PERSONS OF VERBS.

1. A verb is governed by its nominative with regard to number and person: as,

Francis goes out; *Francesco esce*.

The pupils went out; *gli scolari uscirono*.

2. When there are more nominatives than one agreeing in person, whether in the singular or plural, the verb is put in the plural of that person:

The mason and shoemaker cannot come:

Il muratore ed il calzajo non possono venire.

The nominatives here being both of the third person singular, the verb is therefore put in the third person plural.

3. But if the several nominatives are of different persons, the verb is then put either in the first or second person plural; in the first, if one of the nominatives should be of the first person; in the second, if one of them should be of the second person, and no one of the first: this being the established order of all languages:

You and I shall go; *voi ed io andremo.*

He and I shall go; *egli ed io andremo.*

You and they will go; *voi ed eglino andrete.*

4. When the nominative is a noun singular collective, as army, *esercito*; crowd, *folla*; mob, *plebe*; the verb is generally put in the singular in Italian:

The people of this country are hospitable;

Il popolo di questo paese è ospitale.

5. The infinitive mood is used in Italian instead of the *second person singular* of the *imperative*, with a negative, but never without: as,

Eat not thou meat; *non mangiar carne*; being an elliptical mode in which is understood, *ti comando, ti prego, ti esorto*, or *ti consiglio, di non mangiar carne.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. A progressive or continued act, expressed in English by the verb *to be* and participle in *ing*, is expressed in Italian by the verbs *stare*, or *andare*, with the gerund: as,

Io sto scrivendo; I am writing.

Io sto leggendo; I am reading.

Io vo cercando; I am looking for.

Io stava leggendo, io andava cercando;

I was reading, I was looking for.

If the act implies motion, *andare* is most properly used, and *stare* if it does not, as in the examples given.

2. The imperfect implies continuance or reiteration of action; therefore whenever the verb in English may be turned into *was*, and the participle in *ing*, or into *used*, it is to be rendered by the imperfect tense in Italian: thus, if, without altering the meaning, *I looked for* may be changed into *I was looking for*, or *used to look for*, it may be rendered *Io cercava*.

For the same reasons, in speaking of moral qualities of persons, or properties of things no longer existing, the imperfect is used, when the continuance of their existence at the time spoken of is considered:

Cesare era clemente; Cæsar was merciful.

*Cartagine era una città ricca, ed aveva
venti tre miglia di circuito;*

Carthage was a rich city, and had twenty
three miles in circumference.

But when it is intended to indicate their non-existence in our own days, the preterite must be used:

Cesare fu gran guerriero;

Cæsar was a great warrior.

3. The preterite (which is also termed the simple perfect or definite) expresses an action done at a determinate time, or time beyond a particular period:

Avanti jeri vi scrissi;

I wrote to you the day before yesterday.

*Il ratto d'Elena fu cagione dell'assedio di
Troja;*

The rape of Helen was the cause of the siege
of Troy.

4. The compound of the present signifies an action done at an indeterminate time, or within a period not finished:

*Io l'ho veduto oggi, questo mese, questo
anno;*

I have seen him to-day, this month, this
year.

Avete veduto il mio caro figlio,

Have you seen my dear son?

5. The compound of the preterite is used after the conjunctions *come*, as; *subito che*, as soon as; *appena che*, hardly; *quando*, when; *dopo che*, after:

Dopo che ebbe parlato; after he had spoken.

6. In English, it is common for a verb referring to a future time to be in the present, or compound of the present tense, preceded by one of those conjunctions; but in Italian it is put into the future tense simple or compound: ..

Se verrete, ceneremo più per tempo;

If you come, we shall sup earlier.

Quando avrò finito di scrivere, vi ascolterò;

When I have done writing I shall listen to you.

Lo farò se potrò; I will do it if I am able.

7. The Italians commonly use the compound of the future with the adverb *forse*, perhaps, and with verbs denoting uncertainty, as *sperare*, to hope; *credere*, to believe; when the English make use of the compound of the present: as,

Forse gli avrà detto di non uscire;

Perhaps he has told him not to go out.

Credo che sarà arrivato; I think he is arrived.

8. *Do*, *did*, etc. used as auxiliaries, are not expressed in Italian: as,

I do write; *scrivo*

He does not write; *non iscrive*.

9. The compound of the conditional is often used in Italian when, with greater propriety, the simple tense is used in English: as in the following examples,

Lo spirito predisse che Cesare avrebbe vinto;

The spirit predicted that Cæsar would vanquish.

10. By a poetical license which has grown into general use, the simple imperfect indicative is employed in Italian instead of the compound of other tenses, in instances like the following:

Se non era sua madre, forse non lo prendeva, (instead of *non fosse stata*, and *non l'avrebbe preso*;))

If it had not been for her mother perhaps she would not have taken it: (which, by a similar license, might be rendered, she *had not taken*.)

11. The tenses of the indicative are very commonly used in English when those of the subjunctive are required in Italian, and other languages; namely, in verb subjoined to other verbs, and expressing a contingency or uncertainty: as,

I fear he will come; *temo che venga*.

I fear he has lost much money;

Temo che abbia perduto molti quattrini.

LESSON XX.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. Verbs expressing *doubt, surprise, fear, desire, will, permission, command, suspicion, entreaty*, require the following verb to be in the *subjunctive mood*, when the subjects (that is, the nominatives) of the two verbs refer to different persons: as,

Desidero che venga; I wish he may come.

But when the subject of both verbs is the same, the second is put in the infinitive:

Desidero morire; I wish to die.

2. The tense of the verb in the subjunctive must conform to that of the preceding verb in the indicative: when this first verb is in the present or the future, it requires the subjunctive verb to be in the simple present tense, if a future time or act be signified; and to be in the compound of the present, if a past time or act:

Temo che venga; I fear he may come.

Bramerò sempre ch'egli viva;

I shall always wish that he may live.

Temo che abbia perduto molti quattrini;

I fear he may have lost much money.

Non so che voi l'abbiate inteso;

I know not whether you may have heard it.

3. When this first verb is in one of the past tenses, or in the conditional, then the subjunctive verb must be in the imperfect simple or compound, according as it refers to the future or the past:

Temeva, temei, temerei, che venisse ;—che fosse venuto ;—

I was fearing, I feared, I should fear, that he might come ;—that he was come.

4. <i>Bisognare,</i>	}	to be needful to be necessary
<i>Essere necessario,</i>		
<i>Occorrere,</i>		
<i>Essere espediente,</i>		to be expedient
<i>Essere meglio,</i>		to be better
<i>Essere possibile</i>		to be possible
<i>Essere impossibile</i>		to be impossible
<i>Essere giusto, ingiu-</i>	}	to be just, unjust, good, probable
<i>sto, buono, probabile,</i>		

require the following verb to be in the *subjunctive mood* in Italian, with *che*, when a noun or pronoun intervenes, however expressed in English:

It is better for you to speak ;

È meglio che voi parliate.

It is better for him to go away ;

È meglio ch'egli sene vada.

I must go	} are ex-pressed	<i>bisogna che io vada</i>
Thou must go		<i>bisogna che tu vada</i>
He must go		<i>bisogna ch'egli vada</i>
We must go		<i>bisogna che noi andiamo</i>
You must go		<i>bisogna che voi andiate</i>
They must go		<i>bisogna ch'eglinovadano</i>

5. *Credere*, in the tense of absolute conviction or firm persuasion, admits the verb that follows it to be in the *indicative mood*; the subjunctive being required only when it means to *fancy*, or *suspect*.

Io credo che vi è un Dio;

I believe there is a God.

Credo che sia ammalato;

I believe, *that is*, I suspect he is sick.

6. *Chi, alcuno, nessuno, veruno, niuno, nulla, niente*, in a phrase of *negation, condition, doubt, or desire*, and followed by a relative, require the second verb of the sentence to be in the *subjunctive*:

Non vi è alcuno che mi conosca;

There is nobody that knows me.

Se vi è alcuno che mi conosca;

If there should be any body that knows me.

Vi è alcuno che mi conosca?

Is there any body who knows me?

Desidero che vi sia alcuno che mi conosca;

I wish there may be somebody who knows me.

7. *Che*, when it follows *chicchessia*, *checchessia*, *checchè*, requires the following verb in the subjunctive: as,

Checchessia che diciate ;

Whatever you may say.

Di chicchessia che parliate ;

Of whomsoever you may speak.

8. *Who*, *whom*, *which*, *that*, when carrying with them an idea of *proviso*, or *condition*, require the subjunctive in Italian: as,

Send me a man who is faithful;

Mandatemi un uomo che sia fedele.

9. *However* and *whatever*, expressing, not what is, but what may be, require the subjunctive (1); and the mode of rendering them in Italian may be noted as one of the idioms of the language:

Per poco che sia; however little there be.

Per potere che abbia; whatever power he may have:

(that is, *per poco che può o possa essere*: *per potere che può o possa avere*.)

10. The subjunctive is also used after a superlative:

Il più ricco che io conosca ;

The richest man I know.

(1) Called by some grammarians the *potential* in this sense.

11. In Italian, as in other languages, there are particular conjunctions which govern the *subjunctive*; for these we refer to that part of speech.

LESSON XXI.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. Some verbs govern a following verb in the infinitive mood, without a preposition; after other verbs, a preposition is required with the infinitive.

2. Infinitives following or depending upon *do-vere*, to be incumbent; *fare*, to do; *potere*, to be able; *bisognare*, to need; *volere*, to be willing; *vedere*, to see; *udire*, to hear; *sentire*, to feel; and similar verbs, as, *mirare*, to behold; *guardare*, to look; *ascoltare*, to listen; *intendere*, to understand; etc. take no preposition: as,
Io debbo parlarvi; I ought to speak to you.

3. They do not require one after *lasciare*, when it means *to allow*, *to permit*: as,

Lasciatemi parlare; allow me to speak.

But when it means *to leave off*, they take the preposition *di*: as,

Egli non lasciò di parlare;

He did not leave off speaking.

4. They do not require one after *sapere*, when it means *to be able, to be skilled, to know how*: as,

Io so leggere e scrivere;

I know how to read and write.

But when *sapere* means simply *to know*, the infinitive which follows it takes or rejects a preposition according to the next rule.

5. An infinitive after *sapere*, (in the sense last mentioned,) *credere, conoscere, dire, narrare, provare, affermare, negare*, and some others, take *di*, if it has a reference to the subject or nominative of such preceding verb, and if to a different subject, does not take a preposition: as,

Io nego d'averlo fatto;

I deny having done it (myself).

Io nego averlo fatto il padrone;

I deny that the master has done it.

Io so d'essere innocente;

I know (myself) to be innocent.

Io so essere voi innocente;

I know you to be innocent:

which may be equally expressed—*io so che sono innocente—io so che voi siete innocente*—and so of the rest.

6. An infinitive with a verb expressing an affection of the mind, as *desiderare*, to desire,

piacere, to please; *godere*, to enjoy; *sperare*, to hope; *temere*, to fear; *increscere*, to regret; *vergognarsi*, to be ashamed, etc. takes *di* before it: as,

Temo di dispiacervi;

I am afraid to displease you.

7. Infinitives after the following verbs take *di*:—

Accadere	to happen	Giudicare	to judge
Accennare	to beckon	Gloriarsi	to glory in
Accordare	to grant	Guardarsi	to mind
Ammonire	{ to warn to admonish	Immagi- narsi	{ to imagine
Astenersi	to refrain	Impedire	to hinder
Avvertire	to warn	Imporre	to bid
Cessare	to cease	Ingegnarsi	to strive
Curarsi	to care	Intendere	to intend
Comandare	to command	Lusingarsi	{ to flatter one's self
Concedere	to grant	Mancare	to fail
Concludere	to conclude	Meditare	to meditate
Convenire	to agree	Minacciare	to menace
Degnarsi	to deign	Mostrare	to show
Dimandare	to ask	Osare	to dare
Dimenticarsi	{ to forget	Parere	to appear
Dubitare	to doubt	Pentirsi	to repent
Evitare	to avoid	Permettere	to permit
Favorire	to favor	Presumere	to presume
Fingere	{ to pretend to feign	Pretendere	to pretend
Finire	to finish	Procurare	to endeavour
Fissare	to fix	Proibire	to prohibit
		Proporre	to propose

Riconoscere	{ to acknow- wledge	Scommettere	to wager
Ricordarsi	to remember	Sconsigliare	to dissuade
Rimproverare	to reprove	Scordarsi	to forget
Rinfacciare	to reproach	Sembrare	to seem
Ringraziare	to thank	Sostenere	to sustain
Scegliere	to choose	Sovvenirsi	to recollect
		Tentare	to try

8. After verbs of motion, whether real, as *andare*, to go; *venire*, to come; or figurative, as *eccitare*, to excite; *adescare*, to entice; *animare*, to animate; *indurre*, to induce; infinitives take the preposition *a*: as,

Vado a trovarlo; I go to find him.

Perchè m'eccitate a parlare?

Why do you excite me to speak?

To this rule may be added

Agevolare	to facilitate	Costringere	to constrain
Ajutare	to aid	Insegnare	to teach
Assistere	to assist	Mettersi	to put one's self
Applicarsi	{ to apply one's self	Occuparsi	{ to occupy one's self
Aspirare	to aspire	Riuscire	to succeed
Avvezzare	to accustom	Stentare	{ to delay, to labour hard
Cominciare	to begin		
Condannare	to condemn		
Consacrare	to consecrate	Tendere	{ to tend to aim at
Consentire	to consent		

9. After other verbs, infinitives take indifferently *di* or *a*: viz.

Consigliare	<i>to advise</i>	Offrirsi	<i>to offer one's self</i>
Esortare	<i>to exhort</i>		
Esser so-	<i>to be</i>	Pensare	<i>to think</i>
lito	<i>accustomed</i>		<i>to intend</i>
Obbligare	<i>to oblige.</i>	Persuadere	<i>to persuade</i>
		Supplicare	<i>to supplicate</i>

Io mi offro a guidarvi di notte e di giorno ;
I offer myself to guide you by night and by day.

Si offrì di difenderla da ogni pericolo ;
He offered himself to defend her from every
peril.

Per qual cagione mi consigliate di stare zitto?
For what reason do you advise me to be quiet?
Io vi consiglio a farlo ; I advise you to do it.

10. *Essere* and *stare* require *a* before the following infinitive of which they express a progression or continuance of action: as,

Io sono a cenare, or io sto a cenare ;
I am supping.

11. *Avere* requires *a* or *da* before the next infinitive: as,

Voi avete molto a fare, or da fare ;
You have a great deal to do.

12. *Dare* requires *a* or *da*: as,

Voi mi date a credere molte cose ;
You make me believe a great many things.
Datemi da bere ; give me something to drink.

13. A verb in the infinitive mood in Italian, with the article prefixed, is employed in the nature of a substantive, in the same manner as the participle present in English; but it is to be observed that the former preserves so much of its nature as a verb, that as such it can always govern a noun in the sentence, which the latter cannot:

Il vincere sarebbe difficile, e più difficile il conservare le cose vinte;

The conquering would be difficult, and more difficult the preserving of the things conquered.

In this instance, *il vincere*, being substantively used, stands as the nominative to *sarebbe*; *il conservare*, which is also substantively used, and is the nominative to *sarebbe* understood, governs the accusative case by virtue of its nature as a verb.

Il sollevare i poveri è un'opera da buon Cristiano;

The relieving of the poor is a work for a good Christian.

La fama dell'approssimarsi l'esercito Francese;

The news of the approaching of the French army.

Here *approssimarsi* takes the genitive as a sub-

stantive governed by a preceding noun, while, as a verb, it governs an accusative of a noun coming after it.

14. The article used with these infinitives is always the masculine, subject to the same rules as when used with nouns: example,

Più giova lo spaventarlo e il molestarlo che l'affaticarsi per mitigarlo:

The terrifying and molesting of him profits more than the fatiguing of one's self to mitigate him.

15. The infinitive mood, with a preposition, is generally used in Italian, where the participle present is used in English:

L'ora di mangiare; the hour for eating.

Dopo aver letto; after having read.

Desideroso di compiacergli;

Desirous of gratifying him.

Per farlo, per averlo fatto;

For doing it, for having done it.

Ella veniva da vegghiare(1) *con una vicina;*

She came from watching with a neighbour.

Spese in fabbricare; he spent in fabricating.

Senza sapere; without knowing.

16. An infinitive governed by the preposition *da* commonly takes a passive sense:

(1) Vegliare.

Non era da dubitare ; it was not to be doubted.

Non è da credere ; it is not to be believed.

Non ne son io da riprendere, ma ella ;

I am not to be reprehended for it, but she.

17. Infinitives in Italian are governed by an accusative expressed or understood, as in the Latin language:

Dicendo, se il palafreno aver vinto ;

Saying, that he had won the palfrey.

Rispondeva, non dover dubitare ;

He answered, that he ought not to doubt.

Ma Enrico subito disse, importare poco ;

But Henry suddenly said, that it imported little.

18. These infinitives are also employed by Italian writers, after the Latin manner, at the beginning of each clause of a statement; detailing what has been spoken or conceived:

Consideravano il re essere poco capace— ;

aggiungersi la carestia de'danari— ; *rendersi certo—* ; etc.

They considered that the king was little capable— ; that the scarcity of money was to be added— ; that they were to make sure—etc.

LESSON XXII.

GERUND.

1. It is used absolutely (that is, without being governed by another word), but having reference to some subject or nominative preceding:

Egli mandò pregando; he sent, praying.
Sono stato camminando in gran pericolo;
 I have been in great peril going.
Il ladro, udendo strepito, fuggì;
 The thief, hearing a noise, fled.
Egli, udendo la mia osservazione, disse;
 Hearing my observation, he said.

2. It is often connected with a separate subject or nominative, which is always placed after it in Italian, and before it in English:

Noi, udendo il popolo, dichiarammo;
 The people hearing, we declared.
Io, dormendo egli, aprii la porta;
 He sleeping, I opened the door.

3. It governs words dependent on it like any other inflexion of the verb from which it is derived:

Accusative—Confortandolo; comforting him.
Il quale, riconoscendola; who, recognizing her.

*Chiamando il nome di Giovan Galeazzo,
e alzando le sue bandiere;*

Proclaiming the name of John Galeazzo, and
raising his banners.

*Genitive—Ricordandosi delle ingiurie che gli
aveva fatte;*

Recollecting the injuries that he had done
him.

Dative—Restandogli; remaining to him.

Non attendendo al parere d'Alfonso;

Not attending to the opinion of Alfonso.

*Indicative Mood—Affirmando che era tra-
dito.*

Affirming that he was betrayed.

*Subjunctive—Il Papa, desiderando che i Ve-
neziani facessero il medesimo;*

The Pope, desiring that the Venetians
should do the same.

Infinitive—Stimando importare assai;

Deeming it to import much.

Non potendo o non volendo andare;

Being unable or unwilling to go.

4. The gerunds of the auxiliary verbs *avere* and *essere* are often elegantly omitted, and the participles belonging to them used alone, (in the nature of the Latin ablative absolute,) followed by a noun or pronoun of which they take the number and gender:

Ciò detto, parti, (instead of *avendo ciò detto*);
That said, he departed, (*instead of* having
said that).

Finita la pioggia, (instead of *essendo finita
la pioggia*);

The rain having ceased.

PARTICIPLE.

5. The participle of a verb having *avere* for auxiliary may be used absolutely, that is, unvaried; or may agree with the accusative connected with it:

Egli ci ha veduto or veduti; he has seen us.

Ecco i datteri che ho colto or colti;

Here are the dates that I have gathered.

*Ho già mangiato or mangiate le susine, che
voi m'avevate mandato or mandate*;

I have already eaten the plums which you had
sent me.

6. The participle of a verb conjugated with *essere* for its auxiliary always agrees with its nominative:

Ella è stimata da tutti; she is esteemed
by all.

Noi ci siamo pentiti; we have repented.

Elleno sono cadute nelle mani del tiranno;

They have fallen into the tyrant's hands.

7. An English participle in the accusative, governed by a verb, is rendered in Italian by the infinitive mood :

Lo sento cantare ; I hear him singing.

Lo sentii cantare ; I heard him singing.

Le canzoni che ho sentito cantare ;

The songs which I have heard sung.

8. The English participle present may be equally rendered by a tense of the indicative, with the relative *che* :

Io sento che canta ; I hear him singing.

Io sentii che cantava ; I heard him singing.

9. By an idiom of the language, conjunctions such as *subito*, *appena*, *quando*, etc. are frequently suppressed before compound tense, and the participle placed first in the phrase :

Parlato che ebbe ; when he had spoken.

Finita che fu la tregua ;

After the truce was finished.

Cominciata che fosse la guerra ;

As soon as the war should be commenced.

LESSON XXIII.

ON THE PASSIVE VERB AND THE PARTICLE *SI*.

1. The verb *venire*, in its simple tenses, may be employed as the auxiliary instead of *essere*

with a passive verb; but never in its compound tenses: as,

Io sono stimato, or vengo stimato;

I am esteemed.

But invariably—*io sono stato stimato*; I have been esteemed.

In some instances, but more rarely, the simple tenses of *andare* are employed in the same manner: as,

Io vado soggetto alla podagra;

I am subject to the gout.

2. The agent of a passive verb is generally governed by *da, dal, dallo, dalla, dai, dagli, dalle*, and seldom by *per*: as,

Egli è rispettato da lei, e dagli amici nostri;

He is respected by her, and our friends.

3. *One, people, they, we*, employed indefinitely as nominative to an *active* or *neuter* verb, are rendered in Italian by the conjunctive pronoun *si*, with the verb in the third person singular, if there be no accusative: as,

One believes; people, they believe; *si crede*.

One says; people, they say; *si dice*.

One sleeps; people, they sleep; *si dorme*.

4. If, in a phrase of this kind, there be an accusative of the third persons in English, it be-

comes the nominative in Italian, and the verb conforms to it in number: as,

They see a man; *si vede un uomo.*

They see ten men, *si vedono dieci uomini.*

5. Should the accusative be of the first or second person, as *me, thee, us, you; si* cannot be used, but the nominative of such personal pronoun, with the verb in the *passive voice*:

They will punish me; *io sarò punito.*

People blame me, *sono biasimato.*

People do not believe me; *non sono creduto.*

6. When the verb is reflected, *one; people, they*, are expressed by *uno*: as,

Uno si pente; people repent:

(because *si si pente* cannot be said.)

7. If in a phrase of this sort the conjunctive pronoun *ne*, of it, etc. occurs, *si* is changed into *se*: as,

They do not speak of it; *non sene parla.*

8. When *mene, tene, cene, vene* occur in such a phrase, the verb is used in the passive voice, in order to avoid the inconvenient junction of *si*:

They will give me two pounds of it;

Mene saranno date due libbre.

They will give me one pound of it;

Mene sarà data una libbra.

They spoke to us of it; *cene fu parlato.*

9. All verbs having *si* joined to them are conjugated with *essere* in the *compound tenses*:

They have spoken of you; *si è parlato di voi*:

Or we may suppress *si*, and add the participle *stato* to the phrase: as, *è stato parlato di voi*.

Mi si era parlato di voi, or preferably,
m'era stato parlato di voi;

They had spoken to me of you.

10. *It is said, it is believed, it was said, it was believed*, and other expressions equivalent to those of *one says, one believes, people say, believe*, etc. are to be rendered in the same manner:

Si dice, si crede, si diceva, si credeva.

11. Thus the phrases *I am forbidden, I am allowed* to remain, may be expressed in Italian, *mi si proibisce*, or *mi è proibito*; *mi si permette*, or *mi vien permesso di restare*.

LESSON XXIV,

VERBS TAKING DIFFERENT AUXILIARIES.

1. *Active verbs* are conjugated in the *compound tenses* with *avere*: as,

Ho incoraggiato il popolo;

I have encouraged the people.

Reflected verbs take *essere* :

Mi sono pentito ; I have repented.

2. *Impersonal verbs* take *essere* : as,

È piovuto ; it has rained.

3. There is some difficulty attending the *neuter verbs* as to the employment of *essere* or *avere*.

Neuter verbs indicating motion *from* or *to* a place, (1) take *essere* : as,

Sono caduto nel pozzo ;

I have fallen into the well.

È andato in Norvegia ; he is gone to Norway.

4. All *neuter verbs* that may be Englished by *to grow*, or *to become*, and an *adjective* or *participle*, take *essere* :

Egli è ammagrito ; he is grown thin.

5. When a *neuter verb* governs an accusative, it requires *avere*, although it otherwise takes *essere* : because in the former case it becomes active :

Ho passato il ponte, or *sono passato sul ponte* ;

I have passed the bridge, or over the bridge.

(1) But *camminare*, *passeggiare*, to walk ; *ballare*, to dance ; are not included in this rule, and take *avere* in their compound tenses.

NEUTER VERBS CONJUGATED WITH *ESSERE*.

Piovigginare	<i>to drizzle</i>	Giacere	<i>to lie down</i>
Dimojare	<i>to thaw</i>	Riuscire	<i>to succeed</i>
Dighiacciare		Illanguidire	<i>to languish</i>
Didiacciare		Cadere	<i>to fall</i>
Lampeggiare		Cascare	
Folgorare	<i>to lighten</i>	Tomare	<i>to fall up-</i>
Aggiornarsi	<i>to be</i>	Tombolare	<i>side down</i>
Annottare	<i>day-light</i>	Accadere	<i>to happen</i>
Annottarsi	<i>to</i>	Scadere	<i>to devolve</i>
Bisognare	<i>grow dark</i>		<i>to fall</i>
Calere	<i>to be</i>	Avvenire	<i>to come to</i>
Importare	<i>necessary</i>		<i>pas</i>
Rincrescere	<i>to care</i>	Sorvenire	<i>to</i>
Bastare	<i>to concern</i>		<i>come upon</i>
Andare	<i>to be sorry</i>	Addivenire	<i>to fall out</i>
Ire	<i>to suffice</i>		<i>to happen</i>
Gire	<i>to go</i>	Sopravve-	<i>to happen</i>
Venire		nire	<i>unexpectedly, to</i>
Rivenire	<i>to come</i>		<i>come upon</i>
Uscire	<i>to come</i>	Convenire	<i>to agree, to</i>
Entrare	<i>again</i>		<i>be proper,</i>
Stare	<i>to go out</i>		<i>to be neces-</i>
Ristare	<i>to enter</i>	Divenire	<i>sary</i>
Restare	<i>to be</i>	Diventare	<i>to become</i>
Rimanere	<i>to stop</i>	Svenire	<i>to faint</i>
Scaturire	<i>to stay</i>	Nascere	<i>to be born</i>
Piacere	<i>to remain</i>	Perire	<i>to spring</i>
Dispiacere	<i>to spring</i>	Svanire	<i>to perish</i>
	<i>to issue</i>	Apparire	<i>to vanish</i>
	<i>to please</i>		<i>to appear</i>
	<i>to displease</i>		

Comparire	<i>to appear before the judge</i>	Sparire	<i>to disappear</i>
		Appartenere	<i>to belong</i>

NEUTER VERBS CONJUGATED WITH BOTH
ESSERE AND *AVERE*.

Affondare	<i>to sink</i>	Sortire	<i>to be allotted to make sally to elect</i>
Correre	<i>to run</i>		
Crescere	<i>to grow</i>	Spicciare	<i>to dispatch to issue</i>
Fuggire	<i>to shun to flee</i>	Valere	<i>to gush out to be worth to be skilled</i>
Guarire	<i>to cure</i>	Vivere	<i>to live</i>
Passare	<i>to recover</i>	Morire	<i>to die</i>
Partire	<i>to pass</i>	Tornare	<i>to kill</i>
Pascere	<i>to part</i>	Ritornare	<i>to return</i>
Risolvere	<i>to depart</i>	Aggiornare	<i>to be day-light</i>
Salire	<i>to feed</i>	Balenare	<i>to lighten</i>
Scendere	<i>to resolve</i>	Spruzzolare	<i>to drizzle</i>
Seguire	<i>to go up</i>	Tonare	<i>to thunder</i>
	<i>to descend</i>	Nevicare	<i>to snow</i>
Smontare	<i>to follow</i>	Fioccare	<i>to hail</i>
Diacciare	<i>to happen</i>	Grandinare	<i>to hail</i>
Ghiacciare	<i>to alight</i>	Piovere	<i>to rain</i>
	<i>to go down</i>		
	<i>to freeze</i>		

LESSON XXV.

VERBS GOVERNING DIFFERENT CASES.

1. Some verbs govern the *genitive* and some the *dative* in Italian, whatever case they may govern in English.

Verbs always governing the genitive: —

Rammen-	<i>to</i>	Arrossire	<i>to</i>
tarsi	<i>remember,</i>	Conoscersi	<i>blush</i>
Ricordarsi	<i>call</i>	Giovarsi	<i>be versed</i>
Sovvenirsi	<i>to mind</i>	Approfitarsi	<i>avail one's self</i>
Rallegrarsi	<i>recollect</i>	Offendersi	<i>profit</i>
Accendersi	<i>rejoice</i>		<i>{ be offended</i>
Innamorarsi	<i>beinflamed</i>	Piccarsi	<i>{ be piqued</i>
	<i>be</i>	Confidarsi	<i>pretend</i>
Invaghirsi	<i>enamoured</i>	Curarsi	<i>trust</i>
Accorgersi	<i>fall in love</i>	Abbondare	<i>care</i>
Avvedersi	<i>be aware</i>	Empiere	<i>abound</i>
Attristarsi	<i>perceive</i>	Caricare	<i>fill</i>
Beffarsi	<i>grieve</i>	Adornare	<i>load</i>
Ridersi	<i>make game</i>	Incolpare	<i>adorn</i>
Crucciarsi	<i>laugh at</i>	Fornire	<i>inculpate</i>
Maravigliarsi	<i>be angry</i>	Adagiare	<i>furnish</i>
Contentarsi	<i>wonder</i>	Cibarsi	<i>accommodate</i>
Pentirsi	<i>be content</i>	Nutrirsi	<i>feed</i>
Vergognarsi	<i>repent</i>	Pascersi	<i>live</i>
	<i>be ashamed</i>		

2. Verbs always governing the dative: —

Giovare	{ to be useful to do good	Sopravvivere	to outlive
Piacere	to please	Rassomigliare	to resemble
Dispiacere	to displease	Resistere	to resist
Nuocere	to hurt	Opporsi	to oppose
Aggradire	{ to gratify	Succedere	to succeed
Aggradare		Pensare	to think

Pensare has the dative after it with a noun,
and the genitive with a verb in the infinitive:

Io penso a voi; I think upon you.

Io penso di partire; I think of setting out.

3. *Pendere*, to hang; *dipendere*, to depend;
always govern the ablative.

4. The following govern different cases: —

Perdonare,	<i>to forgive,</i>	} take the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing:
Nascondere,	<i>to conceal,</i>	
Celare,		
Tacere,	<i>to hide,</i>	
Rubare,	<i>to steal,</i>	
Torre,	<i>to take away,</i>	
Portar via,		
Rapire,		

Io gli perdono questa mancanza;

I forgive him this fault.

Non mi tacete la verità;

Do not conceal the truth from me.

Mi rubò il denaro;

He stole my money, or the money from me.

Fidarsi,	<i>to confide,</i>	genitive or dative.
Godere,	<i>to enjoy,</i>	genitive or accusative.
Nascere,	<i>to be born,</i>	} genitive or ablative.
Partirsi	<i>to depart</i>	
Uscire	<i>to go out,</i>	
Ubbidire,	<i>to obey,</i>	} dative or accusative.
Soddisfare,	<i>to satisfy,</i>	
Ribellarsi,	<i>to rebel,</i>	dative or ablative.
Fuggire	<i>to flee,</i>	gen., acc., or ablative.
Attendere,	<i>to mind,</i>	} dative.
	<i>to attend,</i>	
		<i>to wait for,</i>
Abbattersi,	<i>to light upon,</i>	} take the preposition <i>in</i> .
Avvenirsi,	<i>to meet with,</i>	
Incontrarsi,	<i>to fall in with,</i>	
<i>Noi ci abbattemmo in lui; we met with him.</i>		
Frammettersi,	} <i>to</i> } <i>intermeddle,</i>	{ take <i>fra</i> or <i>tra</i> generally; and <i>in</i> sometimes.
Inframmettersi,		
Trammettersi,		
Intrammettersi,		

It is observable that verbs compounded of a preposition prefixed, have that same preposition repeated after, for the government of a noun connected with them:

Addurre ad un luogo; to convey to a place.

Congratularsi con uno; to congratulate one.

Incorrere in un pericolo; to run into danger.

Frammettersi fra due rivali;

To interpose between two rivals.

This, however, though frequently, is far from

being invariably done: the principal exception arises from the case being often regulated solely by the primitive verb, the government of which, when different, supersedes that of its annexed preposition:

Dipendo da voi; I depend upon you.

LESSON XXVI.

ADVERB.

1. An adverb is a word that qualifies the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb, with regard to manner, place, or time.

2. Many Italian adverbs are formed from adjectives by adding *mente* to them, as in English by *ly*, signifying mode or manner: as, from

Prudente; prudent. *Prudentemente*; prudently.

3. If an adjective end in *le*, or in *re*, preceded by a vowel, the final *e* is cut off when *mente* is annexed: as,

Facile; easy. *Facilmente*; easily.

Particolare; particular.

Particolarmente; particularly.

4. In adjectives having a different termination

for each gender, the feminine termination is adopted in forming the adverb: as, from

Savio, (mas.) *savia*, (fem.) wise; *saviamente*, wisely.

5. Adverbs may be formed in the superlative degree by changing the last vowel of the adjective positive into *issimamente*: as,

Onesto; honest.

Onestissimamente; very, or most honestly.

6. Should the adjective end in *io*, *io* is changed into *issimamente*: as,

Savio, wise.

Savissimamente; very or most wisely.

7. Adjectives ending in *co* and *go*, that take an *h* in the plural, require it also before *issimamente*: as,

Ricco; *ricchissimamente*;

Rich, very or most richly.

8. The following adverbial superlatives are irregular; viz. *bene*, well; *benissimo*, very well; *poco*, little, *pochissimo*, very little; *spesso*, often, has both *spessissimo* and *spessissimamente*, very often.

Note, that *poco*, *pochissimo*, *spesso*, *spessissimo*, are used adjectively as well as adverbially.

ADVERBS, AND ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS.

Appunto	{	<i>just so, exactly</i>
Per l' appunto	}	
Affè		<i>faith, upon my faith</i>
Adesso		<i>now, this instant</i>
Attualmente		<i>actually</i>
Anticamente		<i>of old, in times of yore</i>
Avanti		<i>forward, on</i>
Innanzi		<i>hereafter, before</i>
Anzi		<i>rather, on the contrary</i>
Anzi che no		<i>rather</i>
Addietro		<i>behind</i>
Per l' addietro	{	<i>formely</i>
In addietro	}	<i>for the time past</i>
In avvenire	{	<i>henceforth</i>
Per l' avvenire	}	<i>for the future</i>
Appresso	{	
In appresso	}	<i>afterwards</i>
Allora		<i>then, at that time</i>
D' allora in qua		<i>since that</i>
Adagio		<i>slowly, gently</i>
A bell' agio		<i>at leisure</i>
Ancora		<i>also, likewise, yet, still</i>
Anche	{	
Altresi	}	<i>also, likewise, even</i>
Assai		<i>much, very, sufficiently</i>
D' assai		<i>by far</i>
Assai volte		<i>many times</i>
Altrove		<i>elsewhere, somewhere else</i>
Altronde	{	
D' altronde	}	<i>from elsewhere, besides</i>
Affatto		<i>quite, entirely</i>
Appieno		<i>fully</i>

Abbastanza	}	<i>enough, sufficiently</i>
A sufficienza		
Almeno	}	<i>at least</i>
Almanco		
Alquanto		<i>somewhat, a little</i>
Altrimenti		<i>otherwise, or else</i>
Avvertitamente	}	<i>advisedly, warily</i>
Avvertentemente		
Apertamente		<i>openly</i>
Attorno	}	<i>about, round about</i>
D'attorno		
Abbasso		<i>below</i>
In alto		<i>above</i>
Bene		<i>well</i>
Ben bene		<i>entirely, very minutely</i>
In breve	}	<i>briefly</i>
Brevemente		
Fra breve		<i>shortly</i>
Bel bello		<i>in a short time</i>
Bel bello		<i>softly</i>
A bocca	}	<i>by word of mouth</i>
A voce		

REMARKS.

Alla Francese, all' Inglese, alla Spagnuola; etc., after the French, English, Spanish manner or fashion, etc. The adjective in such adverbial phrases is always used in the feminine.

When *rather* precedes an *adjective* or *participle past*, it is expressed by *anzi che no*, and the adjective may be placed between *anzi* and *che no*: as,

*Ella è anzi acerbetta che no, or ella è anzi
che no acerbetta ;*

She is rather shy.

LESSON XXVII.

Certamente	}	<i>certainly</i>
Certo		<i>surely</i>
Per certo		<i>truly</i>
Di certo		
Cioè		<i>that is</i>
Cioè a dire		<i>to wit, that is to say</i>
Circa	}	
Incirca		<i>nearly, thereabout</i>
All'incirca		
Di corto		<i>shortly</i>
Continuamente	}	
Al continuo		<i>continually</i>
Del continuo		<i>without ceasing</i>
Di continuo		
Costì	}	
Costà		<i>there, in that place</i>
Colà		
Di contra	}	<i>opposite</i>
Di contro		<i>from the opposite side</i>
Dianzi	}	<i>a little while ago</i>
Pur dianzi		<i>shortly, before</i>
Poco dianzi		
Dinanzi		<i>before</i>
Da qui innanzi	}	<i>hereafter, for the future</i>
Da qua in avanti		
Da quell'ora	}	
Da quel punto in poi		<i>from that time, since</i>

Domani		<i>to-morrow</i>
Dietro	}	<i>behind</i>
Di dietro		
Indietro		<i>backwards</i>
Dirimpetto		<i>opposite</i>
Diversamente	}	<i>differently</i>
Differentemente		
A dispetto	}	<i>out of contempt</i>
Per dispetto		
Cotanto		<i>scornfully, out of spite</i>
Così		<i>so much, so long, so</i>
Così così		<i>so</i>
Come		<i>so so, tolerably well</i>
Compiutamente		<i>as, how, like</i>
Al contrario	}	<i>entirely, thoroughly</i>
Per lo contrario		
A capriccio		<i>other^{wise} contrary</i>
Dentro		<i>capriciously</i>
Di dentro	}	<i>within</i>
Entro		
Per entro		
Addentro		<i>within, far in</i>
Eziandio		<i>also, even</i>
Eguamente		<i>equally, alike</i>
Francamente		<i>frankly, plainly</i>
In fatti	}	<i>really, in effect</i>
Di fatto		
Forse		<i>perhaps</i>
Di fresco		<i>recently, newly, lately</i>
Frattanto		<i>in the mean time</i>
Finora	}	<i>till now</i>
Fino ad ora		
Infino ad ora	}	<i>frequently</i>
Frequentemente		
Di frequente		

Qualche fiata	<i>sometimes</i>
Finalmente	<i>finally</i>
Alla fine	<i>in short</i>
In fine	<i>in the end</i>
In somma	<i>after all</i>
Fuori	
Fuora	
Di fuori	<i>without, out</i>
Di fuora	
A mia, tua, etc.	<i>according to my, thy, etc.</i>
fantasia	<i>fancy</i>
A fondo	<i>thoroughly</i>

LESSON XXVIII.

Già	<i>already, now</i>
	<i>formerly, indeed</i>
Non guari	<i>not very, not much</i>
	<i>not long</i>
Giammai (see mai)	<i>never, ever</i>
Giù	<i>below, down</i>
Di buon grado	<i>willingly</i>
A mio, tuo, suo, etc.	<i>against, my, thy, his, etc.</i>
malgrado	<i>will</i>
A mio, tuo, suo, etc.	<i>to my, thy, his taste</i>
genio	
Infallibilmente	<i>without failing</i>
Senza fallo	<i>certainly</i>
Indubitatamente	<i>undoubtedly</i>
Senza dubbio	<i>without doubt</i>
Per mia fè	
In fede mia	<i>faith, upon my faith</i>
Indi	<i>thence, afterwards</i>
	<i>after, then</i>

Intanto		<i>in the mean while</i>
Immantinente	}	<i>immediately</i>
Incontanente		
Interrottamente		<i>interruptedly</i>
Ivi		<i>there</i>
Intorno	}	<i>about, round about</i>
D'intorno		
Inoltre		<i>moreover, besides</i>
Jeri		<i>yesterday</i>
Jer l'altro		<i>the day before yesterday</i>
Jer mattina		<i>yesterday morning</i>
Jersera		<i>yesterday evening</i>
Jernotte		<i>last night</i>
Lassù		<i>there above</i>
Laggiù		<i>there below</i>
Lentamente		<i>slowly</i>
Lungamente	}	<i>at large</i>
A lungo		
A dilungo		
Lì	}	<i>there</i>
Là		
Di qua		<i>hence, hither</i>
Di là		<i>thence, thither</i>
Lontano	}	<i>far</i>
Lungi		
Da un lato		<i>on one side</i>
Da questo lato		<i>on this side</i>
Da quel lato		<i>on that side</i>
Di gran lunga		<i>by far</i>
Meno		<i>less</i>
Senza meno	}	<i>without fail</i>
Senz'altro		
Mica	}	<i>not</i> { used only with a
Miga		
		<i>not at all</i> { negative particle

Mentre	{	<i>while</i>
Mentre che	}	
In quel mentre		<i>thereupon, just then</i>
Molto		<i>much, very, a great deal</i>
Mai		<i>never, ever</i>
Manco		<i>less</i>
Ad ogni modo		<i>by all means</i>
Senza modo	{	
Senza misura	}	<i>excessively</i>
Oltre misura		
Medesimamente		<i>likewise</i>
Male		<i>not well, badly</i>
Malamente		<i>badly, cruelly</i>
Malissimo		<i>very badly</i>
No	{	
Non	}	<i>no, not</i>
Per niente	{	
Per nulla	}	<i>for nothing</i>
Niente affatto	{	
Nulla del tutto	}	<i>nothing at all</i>
Nè pure or neppure	{	
Nè manco	}	<i>not even</i>
Nè meno		
Di nascosto	{	
Nascostamente	}	<i>secretly, under hand</i>
Celatamente		
A mano destra, or	{	
dritta	}	<i>on the right hand</i>
A mano manca, or	{	
sinistra	}	<i>on the left hand</i>
A destra	{	
A dritta	}	<i>on, or to the right</i>
A sinistra	{	
A manca	}	<i>on, or to the left</i>

REMARKS.

Già is sometimes used as an expletive, for the sake of emphasis, when it is generally equivalent to *indeed*: as,

Non già che me ne dispiaccia;

Not indeed that I am sorry for it.

Mai, and *giammai*, in answering a question, means *never*: as,

Avete veduto quel Signore? Mai;

Have you seen that gentleman? Never.

When used with a verb, they require a negative before it: as,

I never go; *non vado mai*;

In conditional or doubtful phrases, they mean *ever*, if employed without a negative: as,

Se mai lo vedete; if ever you see him.

No is employed as the negative, placed in a detached manner at the beginning or end of a phrase; in other cases *non* is used;

No; son io che ti prego;

No; it is I who pray you.

No; per quello non rimarrà;

No; for that he shall not remain.

Non mi piace, no; it does not please me, *no*.

Vedete se ho fatigato o no;

See if I have worked or no.

After the verbs *dire*, *rispondere*, etc. *no* and *sì* take *di*:

Egli disse di no; he said no.

Ella rispose di sì; she answered yes.

After verbs of doubting, denying, fearing, forbidding, or preventing, *non* is pleonastically introduced, without effecting any negation or alteration of their purport:

Temo che non sia già smarrito;

I fear that he is already gone astray.

Gli vietò che non si passasse il petto;

He hindered him from stabbing himself.

Dubitavan forte che non gl'ingannasse;

They suspected strongly that he deceived them.

This phrascology, though common both in books and conversation, is not approved by the critical; and examples in the best writers show it to be unnecessary: as,

Temevano di essere seguitati;

They were in fear of being followed.

Dubito che presto la perderei;

I apprehend that I should soon lose it.

In the three first examples, therefore, the *non* might, with all propriety, be omitted.

LESSON XXIX.

Or	}	<i>now</i>
Ora	}	
Or ora		<i>just now, presently</i>
Ora. . . ora	}	
Or. . . . or	}	<i>sometimes . . . sometimes</i>
Ognora		<i>always</i>
Omai	}	<i>now</i>
Ormai	}	<i>at this time</i>
Oggimai	}	<i>at last</i>
Oggi		<i>to-day</i>
Oggidi		<i>now-a-days</i>
Oggi a otto		<i>this day se'nnight</i>
Onde		<i>whence, therefore</i>
Donde		<i>whence</i>
Ove		<i>where</i>
Oltremodo		<i>very much, excessively</i>
Oltre ciò	}	
Oltracciò	}	<i>moreover, besides</i>
Ottimamente		<i>perfectly well</i>
All'opposto		<i>on the contrary</i>
Piuttosto	}	
Più presto	}	<i>rather, sooner</i>
Prima		<i>before, first, sooner</i>
Peggio		<i>worse</i>
Pessimamente		<i>very badly, most wretchedly</i>
Parimente	}	
Al pari	}	<i>likewise</i>
Del pari	}	
A posta	}	<i>on purpose</i>
A bella posta	}	<i>with a design</i>

Fuor di proposito		<i>preposterously, improperly</i>
A proposito		<i>to the purpose, in time</i>
In palese	}	<i>openly, publicly, etc.</i>
In pubblico		
Palesemente		
Pubblicamente		
Propriamente		<i>properly</i>
Precisamente		<i>precisely, exactly</i>
Punto		<i>at all, a bit, not, no</i>
A un dipresso	}	<i>nearly, thereabout,</i>
Presso a poco		
Presso ch�		<i>almost, nearly</i>
Presentemente	}	<i>at present</i>
Al presente		
Poco		<i>little</i>
Fra poco		<i>shortly, in a short time</i>
Poco fa	}	<i>a little while ago</i>
Poc' anzi		
Qualche poco	}	<i>a little while</i>
Alcun poco		
A poco a poco		<i>by little and little</i>
Per lo passato		<i>{ for the time past,</i> <i>{ in former days</i>
Quasi		<i>almost</i>
Quando che sia		<i>{ when it is time,</i> <i>{ some day or other</i>
Quindi		<i>thence, afterwards</i>
Quinci		<i>hence</i>
In questo	}	<i>thereupon, during this,</i> <i>during this time</i>
In questa		
In quello	}	<i>at that time</i>
In quella		
Di pi�		<i>besides, moreover</i>

Poscia	}	<i>then, afterwards</i>
Poi		
Dipoi		
Dappoi		
Presto	}	<i>quickly, soon</i>
Prestamente		
Piano		<i>softly, low</i>
Pian piano		<i>very softly, very slowly</i>
Passo passo		<i>gently</i>
Al più		<i>at most</i>
Per lo più		<i>at most,</i>
Il più delle volte		<i>for the most part, mostly</i>
A parte	}	<i>most times</i>
In disparte		
Da parte a parte		<i>aside, apart, by</i>
Da una parte		<i>through</i>
Per la più parte		<i>on one side</i>
Per la maggior parte		<i>mostly,</i>
In parte		<i>for the most part</i>
Da parte mia, tua, etc.		<i>partly</i>
Da parte di		<i>from me, thee, etc.</i>
In qualche parte		<i>from</i>
Quando		<i>somewhere</i>
Quando... quando		<i>when, whenever</i>
Di quando in quando		<i>sometimes... sometimes,</i>
Qualvolta	}	<i>now... now</i>
Ogni volta che		
Qui	}	<i>now and then</i>
Qua		
Quivi		<i>whenever</i>
Quassù		<i>here</i>
Quaggiù		<i>there</i>
		<i>here above, up here</i>
		<i>here below</i>

ADVERBS.

231

Recentemente		<i>recently, of late, lately</i>
Ratto		<i>swiftly, quickly</i>
Raro	}	<i>seldom, rarely</i>
Rado		
Di raro		
Di rado		
Rare volte		
Rade volte	}	<i>opposite</i>
Di rincontro		

REMARKS.

Punto is not a mere expletive: it gives great strength to a phrase: as,

Non vorrei punto che diceste;

I would not by any means have you say.

Mica and *miga* do the same.

Pressochè is used before an *adjective* or *participle*.

LESSON XXX.

Si		<i>yes, so</i>
Sicuramente		<i>assuredly, surely</i>
Da senno	}	<i>in earnest</i>
Daddovero		
Da buon senno		
A mio, tuo, suo, etc.	{	<i>according to my, thy, his, etc. will, or advice</i>
senno		
Subitamente	{	<i>suddenly, immediately</i>
Subito		

Spesso	}	<i>often, several times</i>
Spesse fiate		
Spesse volte		
Sovente		
Sempre	}	<i>always, ever, for ever, continually</i>
Mai sempre		
Sempre mai		
Speditamente		
Testè	}	<i>quickly just now, not long ago</i>
Tostamente		
Tosto		
Tantosto		
Tardi	}	<i>late</i>
Tuttora		
Tuttavia		
Di tratto in tratto		
Di tanto in tanto	}	<i>now and then, sometimes</i>
Talora		
Talvolta		
Per tutto		
Da per tutto	}	<i>every where</i>
Tanto		
Troppo		
A mio, tuo, suo, etc.		
talento	}	<i>so much too much, too according to my, thy, his, etc. wish</i>
Su		
Sopra		
Sotto		
Soverchio	}	<i>under, down to the bottom exceedingly, immediately, too much</i>
Soverchiamente		
Smisuratamente		
Al tutto		
Del tutto	}	<i>entirely, all together</i>
Sufficientemente		

Solo		
Soltanto	}	<i>only</i>
Solamente		
Scarsamente		<i>scarcely, sparingly</i>
Siccome		<i>as</i>
Similmente		<i>likewise</i>
A bello studio		<i>on purpose, wilfully</i>
Alla scoperta		<i>openly</i>
Di soppiatto		<i>secretly, under hand,</i> <i>by stealth</i>
Veramente	}	<i>truly, in truth</i>
In verità		
In vero		
Una volta	}	<i>once</i>
Una fiata		
Alle volte		<i>at times,</i>
Qualche volta		<i>sometimes</i>
Ogni volta		<i>every time, whenever</i>
Più volte		<i>several times, often</i>
Unquema	}	<i>never, ever</i>
Unquanco		
Ultimamente		<i>lately, at last</i>
Per ultimo	}	<i>at last</i>
In ultimo		
Da vicino		<i>near, close</i>
Qui vicino		<i>just by</i>
Unicamente		<i>only, singularly</i>
Volentieri		<i>willingly</i>
Ben volentieri		<i>very willingly,</i> <i>with much pleasure</i>
Di buona voglia		<i>willingly</i>
Mal volentieri		<i>unwillingly,</i>
Di mala voglia		<i>with ill will</i>

Adverbs denoting locality in a manner corre-

sponding with the three classes of demonstrative pronouns:—

First Class.	Second Class.	Third Class.
Where the speaker or writer is.	Where the person ad- dressed is	Distant from both.
Qui <i>Here</i>	Costì, cotestì, (<i>referring to a specific place</i>)	Lì, colì <i>There</i>
Quà <i>Here</i>	Costà, cotestà (<i>in a less determinate sense</i>)	Là, colà <i>There</i>

Some grammarians are of opinion that the *adverbs of place*, *lì*, *qui*, *costì*, convey a more limited meaning than *là*, *qua*, *costà*: that the former should be used in speaking of a house, village, town, etc. and the latter of a province, kingdom, etc.: but this distinction is not much attended to in common conversation.

LESSON XXXI.

PREPOSITION.

1. A preposition is an indeclinable word, which has the power of varying the meaning of other parts of speech to which it is applied: it serves also to connect words with one another, and

show the relation between them. It is commonly *put before* the words with which it is joined, as its name denotes.

2. There are, however, some Italian prepositions which are allowed to deviate from the general rule of position, being placed after the nouns they govern, in poetry and in elevated style in prose.

3. Prepositions are employed principally in governing the cases of nouns and pronouns, and the infinitives of verbs; and, by the association of them with adjectives, many adverbial modes of speech are effected.

4. The signification and employment of most of the Italian prepositions may be easily acquired: but there are two, *da* and *per*, which have such variety and peculiarity in theirs, as demand some explication.

DA.

1. *Da* is used like *by*, for signifying instrumentality or agency:

Sono stato ingannato da lui;

I have been deceived by him.

Una lettera scritta da lei;

A letter written by her.

Ferito da una saetta; wounded by an arrow.

2. It is used like *from*, to denote term, difference, or separation of any sort:

La marina da Reggio a Gaeta;

The sea-coast from Reggio to Gaeta.

Da sera a mattina; from evening to morning.

Da morte a vita; from death to life.

Siete diverso assai da lui;

You are very different from him.

Tortosa giace sulla costa, nove miglia da Tripoli;

Tortosa lies upon the coast, nine miles from Tripoli.

3. It is used with numerals to signify *about*:

Noi prendemmo da venti prigionieri;

We took about twenty prisoners.

Fu tenuto in prigione da dieci mesi;

He was kept in prison about ten months.

4. It is used in signifying that which is *sufficient* or *requisite* for the purpose in question:

Dateci da cena; give us some supper.

Vi è da mangiare in casa;

There is enough to eat in the house.

5. It is much employed to signify fitness, aptitude, capability, the infinitive of *fare* or of some equivalent verb being understood:

Quel signore è uomo da molto:

That gentleman is a man of ability.

Egli non è uomo da quell'impiego;

He is not a man fit for that appointment.

Questa signora tiene due figlie da maritarsi;

This lady has two marriageable daughters.

6. It is used to signify what is *becoming*, *proper*, or *peculiar* to the character mentioned; in which sense it has frequent employment in protestations and averments:

L'amo da fratello; I love him like a brother.

Si comportò da soldato valoroso;

He behaved himself like a valiant soldier.

Non vi rispondo da medico, ma bensì da vostro buon amico;

I do not answer you as a physician, but merely as your good friend.

Vi giuro da galant'uomo;

I swear to you as I am an honest man.

Vi dico da uomo d'onore;

I tell you upon the faith of a man of honor.

Tutti gli accidenti di questa commedia sono contro natura e da romanzo;

All the incidents of this play are unnatural and romantic.

7. Used with infinitives, it signifies expediency or necessity, propriety or duty:

La gratitudine è sommamente da commendare;

Gratitude is highly to be commended.

Si credeva essere forte da cavalcare ;
He believed himself to be stout for riding.

8. It is used with primitive or personal pronouns to signify *alone*, without the intervention of another person or thing :

Egli rispose, da me non venni ;

He replied, by myself I did not come.

Sometimes *per* is added in this sense.

Molte malattie guariscono da per sè ;

Many maladies cure by themselves.

9. It is used to signify with brevity *at*, *in*, or *to the habitation* of a person: as,

Andate da mio padre ; go to my father's. (1)

When there is a motion to the habitation,

To my house	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \right\} \begin{array}{l} \text{are} \\ \text{expressed by} \end{array}$	<i>da me, or a casa mia</i>
To thy house		<i>da te, or a casa tua</i>
To his house		<i>da lui, or a casa sua</i>
To her house		<i>da lei, or a casa sua</i>
To our house		<i>da noi, or a casa nostra</i>
To your house		<i>da voi, or a casa vostra</i>
To their house		<i>da loro, or a casa loro*</i>

(1) If the substantive be without a pronoun, the ablative article is used: as,

Andrò dal senatore, (that is, a casa del senatore ;)

I shall go to the senator's.

Andremo dallo zio del mio maestro, (that is, a casa del zio del mio maestro ;)

We shall go to my master's uncle's.

* The mode of signifying *to my house*, *to thy house*, etc. by *da me*, *da te*, etc. is not to be used on all occasions, indiscriminately,

The motion in such phrases is often not directly mentioned, but merely implied: for instance,

Jeri pranzò da me il vostro amico N.;

Yesterday your friend N. dined at my house.

Domani sarò da lui, viemmi a trovar cold;

To-morrow I shall be at his house, call upon me there.

When a person's own *house* is meant, in the sense of *home*, *a casa*, or *in casa* is used without the possessive pronoun: as,

Vado a casa; I am going home.

Non è in casa; he is not at home.

for it carries with it a supposition of the person or persons mentioned being then *in* his, her, or their house; consequently, *I am going home* must be expressed, *io vado a casa mia*, or simply *vado a casa*, and not *io vado da me*, which would convey quite a different sense, to wit, *I am going somewhere by myself*, (that is, without being compelled or conducted). By the same rule, *he is not at home* must be expressed *non è in casa*: (*non è da lui* would be absurd.)

This mode is nevertheless employed in colloquial familiarity, with neglect of such exactness; but in cases where no ambiguity can arise: for instance,

Corri a compir questo affare, intanto io vado da te a scrivere;

Run and manage this affair, meanwhile I will go to thy house and write.

Va da me, e di' al mio servo;

Go to my house, and tell my servant.

Io veniva da te, e l'averli incontrato mi fa risparmiare cammino;

I was on my way to thy house, and the meeting of thee saves part of my journey.

Still, *vado a tua casa, va in casa mia, veniva in tua casa*, would be more proper in all such cases.

PER.

1. *Per* is used to signify motive, end, or object; particularly with infinitives:

Farò quanto potrò per contentarvi;

I will do as much as I can in order to content you.

Servirà per dar un saggio:

It will serve to give a sample.

Vi dico questo per ricordo e non per consiglio;

I tell you this for the purpose of recollection and not of advice.

2. Employed with an infinitive after *essere* or *stare*, it signifies something to be impending or expected, intended or threatened:

Sto per dirvelo; I am going to tell it you.

Egli sta per cadere; he is in danger of falling.

Egli è stato per morire; he has been near dying.

Egli fu per andare; he was just going.

Quella signora stà per maritarsi;

That lady is about to be married.

3. It is used to denote cause, or means:

Divenne quasi mutolo per vergogna;

He became almost mute for shame.

La gloria di Catone era non meno celebre per le cose civili che quella di Cesare per le militari;

The glory of Cato for civil affairs was not less famed than that of Cæsar for military.

Impazzisce per gelosia ;

He is getting mad out of jealousy.

*Per le continue pioggie, ogni rivo è divenuto
un fiume ;*

By the continued rains, every rivulet is become a river.

4. *Per* is used in the same manner as *da* in denoting instrumentality or agency:

Apparecchieranno le vivande che per Parmeno loro saranno imposte ;

They will prepare the victuals that shall be required of them by Parmeno.

Le sue ossa furono sepolte per Ottaviano ;

His bones were buried by Octavian.

Questo sasso non si potrebbe muovere per sei cavalli ;

This stone could not be moved by six horses.

5. It is used with nouns to signify space of time, or of place:

Per più dì dimorando quivi ;

Remaining there for many days.

Per un giorno s'attribuisca a ciascuno l'onore ;

Let the honor be attributed to each for one day.

E per mare e per terra, è tutto pien di pericolo ;

Both by land and by sea, all is full of peril.

Passeremo per Pisa ;

We shall pass through, or by Pisa.

6. It serves to signify the nature or character of persons and things:

L'ha palesato per truffatore ;

He has exposed him for a cheat.

Se non avesse per moglie una dama prudente ;

If he had not a prudent lady for wife.

Essendo stato un pessimo uomo in vita, in morte è riputato per santo ;

Having been a very bad man in life, in death he is reputed for a saint.

Sbagliano il vizio per virtù ;

They mistake vice for virtue.

7. It is used in supplications and abjurations:

Per l'amor di Dio ; for the love of God.

Ti prego per quell'amore che ti porto ;

I pray thee by that love which I bear thee.

8. It is joined with various nouns in an adverbial way, to signify the mode, method, or manner of any thing:

Per accidente ; by accident.

Per minuto ; by detail.

Per vicenda ; by turn.

Per giorno ; daily.

9. It takes the sense of *however, whatever,*

with substantives or adjectives, and a verb in the subjunctive mood:

Per pochi che sieno; however few they be.

Per potere ch'ella abbia;

Whatever power she have.

Nè per lacrime, gemiti, o lamenti che facesse, lo volle sciogliere;

Nor for any tears, groans, or lamentations that he could make, would she loose him.

10. It is used in the sense of distribution:

Riceverono dieci ducati per uomo;

They received ten ducats a man.

PREPOSITIONS,

WITH THE CASES THEY GOVERN.

The case first specified is the one most generally used.

Accanto *near, by* governs the D.

Allato { *near, by, at the side* } D. G.
 { *of, about* }

Dallato *near, by, at the side of* D.

Addosso* { *on, upon one's back,* } D.
 { *about, at* }

A fronte *opposite, over against* D. G.

* In such expressions as, I carry money about me; I have no money about me, etc. the second personal pronoun is suppressed in Italian, and the preposition (*addosso*) turned into an adverb: as, *Io porto denari addosso*; *Non ho denari addosso*; (that is, *addosso a me, a me being understood*).

Appetto	{ <i>opposite, in comparison, to, compared</i> }	D. G.
A guisa	{ <i>like</i> }	G.
A modo	{ <i>before</i> }	Acc.
Anzi	{ <i>at the foot</i> }	G.
Appiè	{ <i>with, near, by, in comparison, to</i> }	Acc. G. D.
Appo	{ <i>with, near, by, next</i> }	Acc. G. D.
Appresso	{ <i>before, in the presence of</i> }	D. Acc. G.
Avanti	{ <i>before, in the presence of</i> }	D. Acc.
Davanti	{ <i>before,</i> }	{ D. Acc.
Innanzi	{ <i>in the presence of</i> }	{ D. Acc. Abl.
Dinanzi	{ <i>before</i> }	G.
Prima		D.
Attorno		D.
D'attorno	{ <i>about, round about</i> }	{ D. D. D. Abl.
Intorno		
D'intorno		

By a peculiarity of the language considered to be elegant, a preposition governing a personal pronoun in the dative, with a verb neuter in the phrase, may sometimes be turned into an adverb in Italian, the pronoun being then made conjunctive, and governed by the verb: as,

Egli mi sta appresso; he stays near me.

Voi gli siete attorno tutto il giorno;

You are about him the whole day:

Instead of *egli sta appresso a me*;—*voi siete attorno a lui*.

But this sort of transposition is not applicable to all prepositions; for instance,—*egli rimaneva*

ambasciadore appo lui; he remained ambassador to him:—cannot be transposed to *egli gli rimaneva ambasciatore appo*, which would be strange and improper.

LESSON XXXII.

PREPOSITIONS

CONTINUED.

Circa	{ <i>about, concerning</i>	{ governs the }	Acc. D. G.
Contro	{ <i>against</i>		G. Acc. D.
Contra	{ <i>over against</i>		D. Acc. G. Abl.
Dietro	<i>behind</i>		D. Acc.
Dentro	<i>within</i>		Abl.
Di là	<i>on that side</i>		Abl. D.
Di quà	<i>on this side</i>		Abl. D.
Discosto	<i>far</i>		Acc. G. D.
Dopo	<i>after</i>		Acc. D.
Entro	<i>within, in</i>		Acc.
Eccetto	<i>except, but</i>		D.
Sino			D. Acc.
Insino	{ <i>till, until,</i>		D.
Fino	{ <i>as far as, to</i>		D.
Infino			D. Acc.
Fuori	{ <i>beside, besides, out, outside</i>		G. Acc.
Fuorchè	<i>except</i>		Acc.
Infuori	<i>except, but, excepted</i>		Abl.
Incontro	<i>against, opposite</i>		D.
Inverso	<i>towards, about</i>		Acc. G.

Inver, or	} <i>towards</i>	Acc. G.
In ver (1)		
Lontano	} <i>far</i>	Abl. D.
Lungi		
Lunge		
Lungo	<i>along, near</i>	Acc. D. G.
Lunghesso	<i>along, near it</i>	Acc.

REMARKS.

Infuori is placed after the case it governs: as,
Da tre infuori; except three.

Lontano and *discosto* may each become an adjective, and agree with the substantive or pronoun to which it has reference: as,

Siamo lontano (prep.) *dalla torre*, or *siamo lontani* (adj.) *dalla torre*;

We are far from the tower.

LESSON XXXIII.

PREPOSITIONS

CONTINUED.

Fra	} <i>within</i>	} govern	} Acc.
Tra			
Infra			
Intra			
	} <i>between</i>	} the	} Acc.
A mezzo	} <i>among</i>	} govern	} Acc.
In mezzo			
Damezzo			
	} <i>in the middle</i>	} D. G.	} Acc.

(1) Contraction of *inverso*.

Mediante	<i>through, by means of, for</i>	Acc.
Oltre	<i>beyond, besides</i>	D. Acc.
Oltra		
Presso	<i>near, almost</i>	D. G. Acc.
Appresso	(see page 244.)	
Quanto	<i>as for, as to, as</i>	D.
In quanto	<i>as for, as to</i>	D.
Rasente	<i>close to</i>	Acc. D.
Rimpetto	<i>over against, opposite</i>	D.
Dirimpetto		
A rimpetto		
Addirimpetto		
Salvo	<i>except, but, save</i>	Acc.
Secondo	<i>according to</i>	Acc.
Senza	<i>without</i>	Acc. G.
Sopra	<i>on, upon, by</i>	Acc. G. D.
Sovra		
Sotto	<i>under</i>	Acc. G. D. Abl.
Su	<i>upon, on</i>	Acc.
In su		
Su per		
Verso	<i>towards, to</i>	Acc. G.
Ver		Acc.
Vicino	<i>near</i>	D. G.

REMARKS.

A mezzo becomes declinable if we suppress the article: as,

A mezzo la notte, or *a mezza notte*; (which is better, or, at least, most in use)

In the middle of the night.

Salvo is declinable also: as,

*Perdemmo tutto, salvo la vostra stima, or
salva la vostra stima;*

We lost every thing but your esteem.

Sovra is poetical.

See the preposition *Su* joined with the article—page 27.

Vicino may be declinable: as,

*La nave è vicina al porto, or la nave è vi-
cino al porto;*

The ship is near the harbour.

LESSON XXXIV.

CONJUNCTION.

A conjunction is an indeclinable word, or an abridged expression which stands as a link between two words or phrases.

E	<i>and</i>
O	<i>or, either</i>
Ovvero, o vero	{ <i>or, or else</i>
Oppure, o pure	
Ossia, o sia	<i>or</i>
Non che	{ <i>not only, not merely,</i> <i>not only not</i>
Non... che	
	<i>but, except</i>

Non....se non	{	<i>nothing but , nothing else but</i>
Non....altro che		
Non....altra cosa che		
Pure	{	<i>however nevertheless notwithstanding for all that, yet</i>
Nondimeno		
Nulladimeno		
Nientedimeno		
Nonpertanto		
Con tutto ciò	{	<i>nor, neither</i>
Ciò non ostante		
Tuttavia		
Nè	{	<i>then therefore consequently</i>
Adunque		
Dunque		
In conseguente		
Per conseguenza	{	<i>since, after</i>
Posciachè		
Poichè		
Giacchè	{	<i>since</i>
Dacchè		
Ma	{	<i>since, from the time, from the moment but</i>
Laonde		
Perciò		
Per la qual cosa	{	<i>therefore for which reason</i>
Pertanto		
Perciocchè		
Perocchè	{	<i>because, for</i>
Perchè		
Non primache		
Però	{	<i>no sooner....than however, therefore</i>

REMARKS.

E before a vowel may take the letter *d*: as,
Io ed Antonio; I and Anthony:
 anciently it took a *t*.

O may take a *d* before a vowel:
Io od egli; I or he.

Non che, in an affirmative sentence, having
ma expressed or understood for its correlative,
 is applied to signify that which is *least* con-
 siderable of different circumstances adduced:

*Vi si poteva andare all' ombra, non che la
 mattina ma qualora il sole era più alto;*

One might walk in the shade there not only
 in the morning, but even at any hour the
 sun was higher.

*L'amore è di tanta potenza che ha vinto i
 fortissimi uomini non che le tenere donne;*

Love is of such power that it has conquered
 not only tender women but stoutest men.

On the contrary, *non che* is applied to that
 which is *most* considerable of different circum-
 stances, when the sentence is negative:

*Nulla speranza gli conforta mai non che di
 posa ma di minor pena;*

No hope of respite or even of less pain ever
 comforts them: (far from the hope of respi-

te, not so much as the hope of a mitigation of pain ever comforts them).

Se non fosse stato veduto dagli occhi di molti, appena che io ardisi di crederlo, non che di scriverlo ;

If it had not been seen by the eyes of many, I should hardly have ventured to believe, and still less to write it: (I should not only not have written, but even not have believed).

Nè, if placed after the verb, requires another negative before it: as,

Io non amo nè voi nè lui ;
I love neither you nor him.

But we say,
Nè io pensai ; nor did I think.

Pure, used expletively, gives elegant emphasis to a phrase: as,

Dite pur quel che volete ;
Say, now what you will.
Andate pure ; do go.

Pure, followed by *troppo*, means *too well*, *but too well*:

Lo so pur troppo ; I know it but too well.

LESSON XXXV.

CONJUNCTIONS

GOVERNING THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Quantunque	{	<i>although</i>
Ancorchè		
Avvegnachè		
Comechè		
Sebbene		
Benchè	{	<i>before, sooner than</i>
Prima che		
Innanzi che		
Avanti che	{	<i>without</i>
Senza che		
Che	{	<i>that, in order that</i>
Acciocchè		
Affinchè	{	<i>to the end that</i>
Perchè		
Se	{	<i>in order that, although</i>
Purchè		
Solo che	{	<i>if, although, since, whether</i>
Qualora		
Quando	{	<i>provided, if</i>
Dove		
Ove	{	<i>provided, if, whenever, when</i>
Dopo che		
Subito che	{	<i>if, provided</i>
Tosto che		
	{	<i>after</i>
	{	<i>as soon as</i>

Infinattantochè	}	<i>till, until</i>
Insinattantochè		
Infino che		
Infinchè		
Insino che		
Insinchè		
Finchè		
Sinchè	}	<i>suppose</i> <i>in case, put the case</i>
Posto che		
Posto il caso che		
Dato il caso che		

REMARKS.

Sebbene and *benchè* may also take the indicative sometimes, being applied to a matter of certainty: as,

Benchè tu sei uomo, pur ti degradi al di sotto della bestia;

Although thou art a man, thou degradest thyself below a beast.

Che, that, as a conjunction, is in both languages often understood and not expressed; particularly after a verb of doubting, or fearing, and in a sentence of negation, in Italian:

Temo cene privi; I fear he may deprive us of it.

Pregate non mi sia più sorda;

Pray (that) she be no longer deaf to me.

Innanzi si conchiudesse la pace, (instead of *innanzi che*);

Before the peace should be concluded.

Se requires the indicative or the subjunctive according to the sense in which it is employed.

When it goes to express a sure, natural, or expected circumstance, the verbs connected with it are always in the present or future indicative:

*Se andate, (or andrete) in campagna, vengo
(or verrò) con voi;*

If you go (*or* will go) into the country, I will go with you.

Se volete, io resto, or resterò;

If you like, I stay, *or* will stay.

Se vorrete, andrò;

If it will be agreeable to you, I will go.

But when *se* refers to a contingency altogether imaginary, or merely possible but very doubtful remote, or not easy to effect, then the verb immediately following it is put into the imperfect of the subjunctive, and the verb connected with that into the conditional:

Se avessi le ale, volerei;

If I had wings, I would fly.

Se fossi ricco, fabbricherei un bel palazzo;

If I were rich, I would build a fine palace.

Se conoscessi quel signore, gli chiederei un favore;

If I knew that gentleman, I would ask him a favour.

The order of the two verbs may be transposed: as, *Volerei se avessi le ali.*

In conformity with this rule, *se* takes the *subjunctive* when it means *although*:

Se ne perdessi la vita (ancorchè ne dovessi perder la vita);

Though I should lose my life by it.

It takes indifferently the *subjunctive* or the *indicative* when it means *whether*:

Se ciò è, or sia buono o cattivo;

Whether that thing be good or bad.

And it takes the *subjunctive* if it implies a wish: as,

Se voi arrivate al fine del vostro viaggio;

So may you (I wish you may) arrive at the end of your journey. (1)

Qualora, in the meaning of *when*, takes the *indicative*: as,

Qualora volete; when you like.

These three conjunctions, *dopo*, *subito*, and *tosto che* take the *indicative* when there is a subsequent verb that expresses a past action, and the *subjunctive* present, or *indicative* future if the subsequent verb denotes futurity: as,

(1) The employment of *se* in this last sense, after getting obsolete, has been recently revived. It occurs but once in Tasso.

Subito che il re fu arrivato, molti doni furono distribuiti;

As soon as the king was arrived, a great many gifts were distributed.

Subito che arrivi, or subito che arriverà il re, si distribuiranno molti doni;

As soon as the king arrives, a great many gifts will be distributed.

LESSON XXXVI.

INTERJECTION.

An interjection is an exclamation prompted by an emotion of the soul.

Ah!	<i>ah! oh! ha! ho</i>
Ahi!	{ <i>alas</i>
Aimè!	
Ahimè!	
Oimè!	
Ohimè!	
Bene	{ <i>well</i>
Ebbene	
Bravo	<i>bravo, very well</i>
Così	<i>thus</i>
Deh!	{ <i>alas, prithee, pray</i>
Eh!	
Ecco	<i>lo, behold</i>
Guai	<i>woe</i>
Oh!	<i>oh</i>

Oibò	{ <i>fie</i>
Via	
Olà	<i>ho there, hallo</i>
Alto	<i>halt, stop</i>
Orsù	{
Su	
Via	
Su su	
Animo	<i>cheer up</i>
Viva, Evviva	<i>up up, courage</i>
Piano	<i>be firm</i>
Cheto	{
Zitto	
Silenzio	
Lasso	
Lasso me	{ <i>poor me</i>
Ahi lasso!	

Lasso (abbreviated from *lassato*) is declinable even as an interjection,—thus, *ahi lassa! ahi lassi!* according to the gender and number of the persons from whom the exclamation may proceed.

ADDITION ON THE ARTICLE.

The rule respecting the *Partitive* article, given according to the common method, page 32, art. 20, will be more clear and complete by the following explication.

The genitive article *del*, etc. before a noun

which, without article, would be the nominative after a verb passive, or accusative after a verb active, is Englished *some* or *any*: *parte*, part; *porzione*, portion; or some word of the kind being understood in Italian to govern that genitive.

LESSON XXXVII. IDIOMATIC EXPRESSIONS.

Avere	{	sete	{	thirsty	} applied to persons			
		fame		hungry				
		freddo		cold				
		caldo		warm				
		vergogna		ashamed				
		paura		afraid				
		due, tre, sei anni		two, three, six years old				
to be	{	ragione	{	in the right	}			
		torto		in the wrong				
Aver voglia		to have a mind, wish, etc.						
Averla con uno		to be angry with one						
Aver vena, o genio di		to be in a humour for						
Avere a male		{		to take amiss				
Avere per male								
Che avete?		what is the matter with you?						
Che ha? etc.		what is the matter with him?						
Ho freddo alle mani,		{		my hands, my feet, etc. are				
ai piedi, etc.								
Essere or Fare	{	freddo	{	cold	}			
		caldo		warm				
		umido		damp				
		bel tempo		fine weather				
		cattivo tempo		bad weather				

Note, that *fare freddo, caldo, umido*, are said only of the weather. In speaking of any thing else, *essere* only is used; as,

La carne è fredda, the meat is cold.

Essere { comodo {	to be in good circumstances
{ agiato }	
Essere ridotto in miseria	{ to be reduced to great distress }
Essere di	to become of
Essere padrone di	to be welcome to
Essere bene { con	{ to be in good terms } with
Essere male { uno	
	{ to be out } one
Essere pace, or pari	to be even (at play)
Essere in su una cosa	to apply one's self to a thing
Essere { di cannone	{ to be within gun-shot, pistol, etc. shot
a tiro { di pistola, etc.	
Siete voi?	is it you?
Sono io	it is I
Che c'è?	what is the matter?
Andarne la vita,	{ life, honour to be at stake,
l'onore, etc.	
Andarvi { della vita,	
Trattarsi { dell' onore,	{ to have life, honour at stake
re, etc.	
Andar per uno	to go and call one
Andare { a sangue {	to please, to like
{ a genio }	
Andare (for doversi)	to be right or proper
Questo non va detto	this is not to be said
Addossarsi la cura	to take upon one's self the
d'un affare	care of an affair
Battersi le guance di	to repent

Cercare il pel nell'uovo	<i>to seek for a drunken quarrel</i>
Darla vinta	<i>to yield, to give up the dispute</i>
Dare sulla testa, sulle spalle, etc.	<i>to strike on the head, shoulders, etc.</i>
Dar di piglio a	<i>to lay hold on</i>
Dar torto	} ad uno { <i>to lay the blame on one</i>
Dar ragione	
Dare or Augurare	{ il buon capo d'anno } <i>to wish a happy new year</i>
	{ il buon viaggio } <i>to wish one a good voyage, or journey</i>
	{ il buon giorno } <i>to wish one a good morning</i>
Dare il ben venuto	<i>to bid one welcome</i>
Darsi buon, or bel tempo	<i>to live a merry life</i>
Darsi pensiero di	<i>to trouble one's self about</i>
Dar nel	<i>to incline to</i>
Mi duole la testa	{ <i>my head aches, or I have a pain in my head</i>
Mi dolgono gli occhi, etc.	<i>my eyes ache, etc.</i>
Farsi verso uno	{ <i>to approach, to step towards one</i>
Far capitale d'uno	<i>to rely upon one</i>
Farla ad uno	} <i>to play one a trick</i>
Accocargliela	
Farla con uno	{ <i>to be in good terms</i>
Passarsela con uno	{ <i>to keep company</i>
	{ <i>to converse</i> } <i>with one</i>
Far motto	<i>to say a word</i>
Fare { un giro	<i>to take a turn</i>
una passeggiata	<i>to take a walk</i>
Farsi { alla	} <i>to look out of the window</i>
Affacciarsi { finestra	
Farsi alle scale	<i>to come upon the stairs</i>

Farsi alla porta, all'uscio *to go to the door*

Fare { a pugnì
alle pugna } *to box*

Fa se tu sai *do your worst*

Far foce in *to empty itself* { speaking of
a river

Far { vista di
sembiante di } { *to pretend as if,*
to make believe

Fare a metà *to go halves*

Venir fatto *to happen*

Far }
Tirar } vento *to blow*

Far venir l'acqua alla gola } *to make one's mouth water*

Far valere il denaro *to turn the money to good use*

Insidiare alla vita di
Insidiare la vita a } un { *to make attempts upon a*
uomo } *to have designs upon a man's life*

Insidiare l'onore a
Insidiare all'onore di } uno { *to have designs upon one's honour*

Mancar di parola { *to break one's word,*
to disappoint

Mancare al suo dovere *to neglect one's duty*

Mancare alla lezione *to miss the lesson*

Il denaro mi manca *I am short of money*

Le forze mi mancano *my strength fails me*

Non si può { fare
scrivere } { *there is no* { *doing*
parlare } *writing*
speaking

Non importa *it does not signify*

Che importa a voi?
 Che monta a voi? etc. } *what is that to you?*
 Che vi fa?

These last phrases govern the subjunctive:

Che v'importa ch'io vada colà?

What is it to you if I go there?

LESSON XXXVIII.

Mettersi in cammino	<i>to depart</i>
Metter la tavola	<i>to lay the cloth</i>
Mettersi a tavola	<i>to sit down to table</i>
Mettere all'incanto	<i>to sell by auction</i>
Mettere bottega	<i>to set up a shop</i>
Mettere in non cale	{ <i>to forsake</i> <i>not to care</i>
Non far conto di	
	<i>to neglect</i>
Mettere } il cervello	{ <i>to force one to do what is</i> <i>right</i>
} a partito	
Metter del suo	<i>to be a loser</i>
Mettere in sesto	{ <i>to put a thing in order</i>
Porre } sesto ad una	
Dar } cosa	
Trovar sesto ad una cosa	<i>to find a remedy for a thing</i>
Metterne le mani sul	{ <i>to swear to it</i> <i>to take an oath on it</i>
fuoco	
Morir di voglia	<i>to long for</i>
Morir di fame	<i>to starve with hunger</i>
Morir di sete	{ <i>to be choaking with thirst</i>
Struggersi di sete	

Morir di sonno	<i>to be very sleepy</i>
Patir di segato	<i>to have the liver complaint</i>
Pender dalla bocca d'uno	<i>to be attentive to what one says</i>
Perder di traccia	<i>to lose the trace of</i>
Perder di vista	<i>to lose sight of</i>
Perder d'occhio	
Dar fondo	<i>to cast anchor</i>
Prender fondo	
Prendere { in fallo	<i>to mistake</i>
{ in iscambio	<i>to take one for another</i>
Recarsi le mani al petto	<i>to examine one's conscience</i>
Recarsi { ad ingiuria } { a disonore } { ad onore } { a male }	<i>to take it { as an affront as a disgrace as an honour ill</i>
Rimanere con un pal- mo di naso	<i>to be put out of countenance</i>
Ritrarre da	<i>to be like, to take after</i>
Saltar di palo in frasca	<i>to digress from the matter</i>
Tirar su uno	<i>to sift, to pump one.</i>
Scalzare uno	
Tenere a segno	<i>to keep in awe, within bounds</i>
Tenere in cervello	
Tenere a vile	<i>to despise</i>
Tener or { con uno	<i>to be of one's opinion</i>
Tenersi }	<i>to side with one</i>
Tener del semplice, etc.	<i>to be foolish</i>
Tener corte bandita	<i>to keep open house</i>
Tener favella ad uno	<i>not to speak to one, to cut one</i>
Tener segreti i bandi	<i>to conceal things which every body knows</i>

Tenere a battesimo	{	<i>to stand god-father, or</i>	
Levare dal sacro fonte	{	<i>godmother to</i>	
Tenere servitù con uno		<i>to be acquainted with one</i>	
Tenere gente, persone a dozzina	{	<i>to keep boarders</i>	
Per poco mi tengo che non	{	<i>I have a great mind to</i>	{ <i>with the following verb in the sub- junctive mood.</i>
Appena mi tenni che non	{	<i>I was ready to, I was just on the point to</i>	
Egli non si tenne fin- chè non	{	<i>he did not stop till</i>	
Saper di fumo, di dolce, d'agro, etc.	{	<i>to taste smoky, sweet, sour, etc.</i>	
Sonare { il violino il flauto la chitarra	{	<i>to play upon</i>	{ <i>the fiddle the flute the guitar</i>
Giuocare { alle carte a, or agli scacchi a dama	{	<i>to play at</i>	{ <i>cards chess draughts</i>
Sonare } Toccare }	{	<i>il tamburo</i>	<i>to beat the drum</i>
Toccare il Cielo col dito	{	<i>to be quite happy</i>	
Toccare sul vivo, or nel vivo	{	<i>to touch to the quick</i>	
Toccare la mano ad uno		<i>to shake hands with one</i>	
Toccare, or sta a me, a te, a lui, etc.	{	<i>it is my, thy, his turn or duty it belongs to me, thee, him, etc.</i>	
Tocca, } Volta, }	{	<i>cocchiere</i>	{ <i>drive on, } coachman</i>

Torre	{ a credenza,	{ <i>to take upon trust</i>
Pigliare	{ or a credito	
Torre	{ uno di mira	{ <i>to bear a grudge to one,</i>
Pigliare	{	{ <i>or suspect one</i>
Torre, Pigliare	ad imprestito	<i>to borrow</i>
Torre, Pigliare	{ un bastimento a nolo	{ <i>to hire a vessel</i>
Torre, Pigliare	{ una casa a pigione, ad affitto	{ <i>to hire a house</i>
Pigliarsela con uno		<i>to be angry with one</i>
Pigliare a gabbo		<i>to laugh at, not to value</i>
Non veder l'ora		{ <i>to long, to be anxious,</i>
Parer mill'anni		{ <i>impatient</i>
Venir alle mani		<i>to come to blows</i>
Venire in disgrazia di		<i>to incur the displeasure of</i>
Venire a cuore		{ <i>to come into one's head</i>
Cadere in mente		
Venire a salvamento		{ <i>to come</i> } <i>safely, or safe</i>
Arrivare sano e salvo		{ <i>to arrive</i> } <i>and sound</i>
Venire a bene		<i>to thrive</i>
Venir destro		{ <i>to suit, to have an opportunity, to be convenient</i>
Venir l'acquolina in bocca		{ <i>to make one's mouth water</i>
Vivere	{ del suo alla grande da signore di per di	{ <i>to live</i> { <i>upon one's own estate, or income nobly like a gentleman from hand to mouth</i>
Vorrei che		<i>I wish that</i>
Vorrei potere		<i>I wish I could</i>

Volere bene a	<i>to love, to wish one well</i>
Volere male a	<i>to hate one</i>
Voler dire	<i>to wish to say, to mean</i>
Voler piovere	<i>to look as if it would rain</i>
	<i>to threaten to rain</i>
Volersi (<i>for doversi</i>)	<i>to be right or proper</i>
Vuolſi ir cauti	<i>we ought to be cautious.</i>

COLLOCATION OF WORDS.

The grammatical construction of words, as far as relates to the government of them with respect to gender, number, case, time, etc., has been already shown in the several parts of speech so fully, that nothing essential of that kind remains for explanation.

A few observations may, however, be added upon the collocation of words, and particularly of the Conjunctive Pronouns, which is a matter of some nicety. (1)

1. When two conjunctive pronouns come together, one serving for an oblique case, (genitive, dative, or ablative,) the other for the objective, (accusative,) in which two cases they occur together much the most frequently, the former is usually placed first, being just the reverse of the

(1) In Varchi's philological work, *L'Ercolano*, is an extensive analysis of the conjunctive pronouns; and after all, much that a student would desire to learn concerning them is not there. Perhaps they have never yet been completely reduced to rules of position.

position they commonly take when expressed in English. Examples of this have appeared in treating of pronouns; to which the following may be added:

Mi si gettò ai piedi;

He threw himself at my feet.

Non sapea indurvisi;

He could not bring himself to it.

Ognuno ve la concede;

Every one yields it to you.

Concedagli si; be it granted to him.

Non ci si vorrà più far rimprovero;

No more will reproach be made to us.

Cassio ne lo distraeva;

Cassius averted him from it.

Mirava a dissuadernelo;

He aimed at dissuading him from it.

2. Exceptions to this general rule of position occur in some few cases, in which it is altered for the sake of avoiding harshness or ambiguity: as in these instances,

Veniva a vedermi vi;

He came to see me in it, (in that place).

Innanzi agli occhi se gli presentava;

Before his eyes he presented himself to him.

3. Without any such expediency, the usual order is sometimes inverted by poetical or rhetorical licence: as,

Lo mi disse ; he said it to me.

Lo gli diede ; he gave it to him :

Instead of, *me lo disse*, *glielo diede*. But such deviations are not frequent, and are confined to elevated diction.

4. A general exception to the rule is found in the placing of *ne* after *se*, and other pronominal adjuncts of the passive, neuter, or reflected verb :

Se ne parla, me ne vado, se ne viene, levar-sene, etc.

5. It may happen for both pronouns to be in the objective or accusative case, one being the *si* that renders the verb passive, neuter, or reflected, which *si* is then preceded by the other conjunctive pronoun : as,

Mediante il quale la si può imparare ;

By which means one may learn it.

6. It may also happen for two conjunctive pronouns to come together both serving in the oblique case, in which instances the ear directs them to be placed thus :

Le ne parlai ; I spoke to her of it.

Nel caso che altri gliene desse biasimo ;

In case any one should attach blame to him for it.

Che te ne pare ; how appears it to you ?

7. By one of those peculiarities termed idioms of language, a conjunctive pronoun is sometimes taken from the verb to which it properly belongs, and placed before a preceding verb:

Credendovi io piacere, mi farebbe diletto;

Thinking to please you it would give me delight.

Mostrò di volersi di lei vendicare;

He seemed to be willing to revenge himself of her.

The order or arrangement of words in a sentence or period, as far as it is arbitrary, belongs rather to rhetoric than to grammar; nevertheless it may be acceptable not to leave the subject wholly unnoticed here.

In Italian, the words of a sentence sometimes preserve the most simple and direct order; and sometimes take positions approaching the freedom of the Latin idiom. From the nature of the language, these inversions are often expedient for clearness, force, or fluency of diction, and are therefore common in speaking as well as in writing. To regulate them is beyond the reach of grammatical rule; a few examples from the best prose writers will, however, help to render them familiar to the student.

1. The verb is frequently put before its subject or nominative, in any part of a period.

At the beginning.

Sollevarono *questi nuovi consigli gli animi di tutta Italia*;—Guicciardini.

These new counsels stirred the minds of all Italy.

Diede *il re conto di quello che aveva operato*.—Sarpi.

At the end.

Fin qui può correre il mio servizio;—Monti.

Thus far my service may extend.

In tre libri è divisa quest'opera.—Corticelli.

2. The objective or accusative case is often put before the verb to which it refers:

Avevano già sgombrata la strada dai durissimi intoppi che tutte le umane imprese attraversano;—Monti.

They had already cleared the way of the violent obstacles which oppose all human enterprises.

Non sarebbe ragionevole che voi dissimile a voi medesimo vi dimostriate;—Tasso.

It would not be reasonable that you should show yourself dissimilar to yourself.

3. Other cases governed by the verb are also made to precede it:

Genitive.—*Della leggiadria non intendo di ragionare*;—Tasso.

Of gracefulness I intend not to argue.

Delle regole *dalla lingua Toscana scrissero con somma lode celebri autori.*—Corticelli.

Dative. — Alla virtù *de' figli si doni il peccato de' padri*;—Monti.

Let the father's sin be overlooked for the children's virtue.

A lui *si convien lasciar questa cura*;—Idem.

To him it is proper to leave this care.

Ablative. — Dalle cose *dette si può quel che chiedete chiaramente raccogliere*;

From the things said, what you inquire may clearly be gathered.

4. The infinitive, with or without preposition, is made to precede the verb on which it depends:

Se confessar si vuole il vero;—Napione.

If the truth is to be confessed.

Si presentò grandissima opportunità a chiunque di offenderlo desiderava;—Guicciardini.

Very great opportunity presented itself to any one who desired to act against him.

Desiderar si potrebbero alcune cose di più, le quali non sono punto facili ad ottenersi, ma, dove ottener si potessero, sarebbero di grandissima utilità.—Corticelli.

5. The participle is put before the simple tense of the verb with which it is connected:

Già alle sue case ritornato era;—Guicc.

He was already returned to his place of abode.

Proruppe in una esclamazione la quale nasceva da ciò che riflettuto avea;

He burst into an exclamation which arose from what he had reflected.

It is separated by a clause of several words intervening:

Non furono preservate le chiese che dalle mani de' soldati non fossero, con brutti esempi di barbara feritè, spogliate e desolate.—Davila.

The nominative is put between the participle and auxiliary:

Fu l'uffizio fatto dal re;

The office was performed by the king.

6. A noun in the genitive or dative frequently precedes the noun in connexion with it:

Genitive.—*Essendo delle guerre rimasto vincitore;*—Guicciard.

Egli solo delle vostre ragioni e della mia fede potrà esser giudice;—Monti.

He alone can be judge of your reasons and of my fidelity.

Come di gravissima calamità merita se ne faccia menzione;—Idem.

It deserves to have mention made of it as of a very great calamity.

Dative. — All' util vostro avrò riguardo;—
Tasso.

Nel pontefice prevaleva allo sdegno la cupidità sfrenata dell'esaltazione de' figliuoli;
—Guicciardini.

In the pontiff, boundless desire for the exaltation of his children prevailed over resentment.

ABBREVIATION OF WORDS.

The retrenchment of the initial vowel of a word was practised by the early Italian writers, but has long been disused. The curtailment of a word at its termination is general and common; and seems to be required in many cases by the nature of the language.

In speaking and writing Italian, a vowel is often retrenched at the end of a word, and sometimes even a consonant along with it. The practice is regulated by the following principles.

I. A word ending with a vowel may have that vowel curtailed when it is preceded by one of these four liquids, *l, m, n, r*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>l</i> after <i>a</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>u</i>
male..mal fatale..fatal	cielo..ciel fedele..fedel	vile..vil gentile..gentil	duolo..duol figliuolo...figli- uol	curtailment with <i>u</i> before <i>l</i> is hardly ever used
<i>m</i> diamo..diam amiamo.amiam	diremo..direm semo..sem (po- etically for <i>sta-</i> <i>mo</i>)	with an <i>i</i> before <i>m</i> , no retrench- ment is made	uomo..uom	none is made with <i>u</i> before an <i>m</i>
<i>n</i> mano..man invano..invan	seno.. sen appieno..appien	vino..vin mattino...mat- tin	suono..suon perdono..perdon	uno..un alcuno..alcun
<i>r</i> mare..mar andare..andar	here..ber pensiere.. pen- sier	dire..dir desire..desir	fiore..fior dolore..dolor allora..allor	pure..pur, is the only word cur- tailable with this vowel without of- fending the ear Poets have <i>fur</i> for <i>furono</i> .

EXCEPTIONS.

1. No curtailment can be made in the first persons singular of the indicative: therefore, although the substantive *perdono* may be curtailed, it would be wrong to say *io perdon* for *io perdono*. (1)

(1) Tasso lay under the censure of the critical for this elision in a line of his great poem:

(*Amico, hai vinto; — to ti perdon; — perdona*)

until lately that the grammatical fault has been turned into a poetical grace by the taste and ingenuity of Perticari, in making it the broken articulation of an expiring person.

There is a single exemption from this restriction, *io son* for *io sono*.

2. Nor can any curtailment of *a* be made in feminine terminations; consequently, *la Roman matrona*, *una sol volta*, are improper: both writing and speaking require *la Romana matrona*, *una sola volta*.

Yet by a common error, *una sol volta* is sometimes said.

3. Masculine and feminine plurals in *i*, are seldom or never curtailed, unless by poetical licence, which is tolerated rather than approved.

II. When a double consonant of the three liquids *l*, *n*, *r*, precedes the terminating vowel, the entire of the syllable is sometimes retrenched; as in the following words:

Caval (lo), fumicel (lo), vessil (lo), fanciul (lo).

Van (no), andran (no), den (no), pon (no), (in poetry for *deggiono*, *possono*).

Trar (re), scer (re), scior (re), (for *tracere*, *scogliere*, *sciogliere*).

But this retrenchment of an entire syllable belongs almost exclusively to poetry, with exception of the third persons plural of verbs, as *han*, *dan*, *fan*, *san*, *avran*, *daran*, *faran*, *sapran*, etc.; which retrenchments are allowable and common even in prose.

The plural of nouns in *lli* is also abbreviated in poetry, but in a different manner: *augelli*, *capelli*, for instance, being reduced to *augei*, *capei*.

III. There are four words subject to curtailment without regard to the foregoing rules: viz.

Frate to *fra*, brother; *suora* to *suor*, sister; (monastic appellations,) when used in conjunction with a proper name, as *fra Giovanni*, *suor Dorothea*: in other cases they are not curtailed, as *si fece frate Minore*, *la suora disse*; nor yet is the former when an appellative before a vowel, though the latter is: thus, *frate Alberto*, *suor Anastasia*:

Santo, saint, (substantive masculine) to *San* before a consonant, and *Sant'* before a vowel: as, *San Francesco*, *Sant' Antonio*. But as an adjective, this word is not abbreviated: for instance, *andarono a Roma per vedere il santo padre*, (the holy father):

Grande, great, (whether masculine or feminine, singular or plural,) to *gran* before a consonant: as, *gran re*, *gran regina*, *gran cose*: before a vowel it may either be contracted to *grand'* or given at full: as, *grand'ingiuria*, or *grande ingiuria*; *grand'uomo*, or *grande uomo*: before an initial *e*, it will naturally be contracted, *grand'eroe*.

IV. Some other words are also contracted: as, *vo'* from *voglio*, *po'* from *poco*, *fè* both from *fe-de* and from *fece*; *diè* from *diede*; *piè* from *pic-de*: but they are few in number, and hardly reducible to rule.

In the rapidity of pronunciation, a vowel at the end of a word will often be suppressed before another vowel; and many elisions of this kind are met with which come under no rule, being wholly arbitrary, and considered merely as a licence of orthography: such as, *potrebb'essere*, *cent'altri*, *sett'anni*, *poc'anzi*, *onest'uomo*.

V. The plural articles *dei*, *ai*, *dai*, are contracted to *de'*, *a'*, *da'*, whenever expedient, to avoid cacophony or bad sound: such, for instance, as, *dei rei*, *dei tuoi*, *dai suoi*; at which the ear would revolt, and therefore requires *de'rei*, *de'tuoi*, *da'suoi*, instead, and so in a numberless variety of instances sufficiently perceptible, though less strong.

By the same rule the plural article when in composition is contracted to *co'*, *ne'*, *pe'*, *su'*, from *coi*, *nei*, *pei*, *sui*.

VI. Two general restrictions of the licence of abbreviation are, that it cannot take place in words ending in a vowel which is accented; nor yet in any word before an *s impura* if elision would make such word end in a consonant, by

reason of the harshness which that would produce, as will be perceptible in *gentil spirito*, *far studio*, *fanciul scostumato*, *stan stretti*, *San Stefano*, *gran scoglio*: instead of which we must say, at full length, *gentile spirito*, *fare studio*, *fanciullo scostumato*, *stanno stretti*, *Santo Stefano*, *grande scoglio*.

If, however, the curtailment will cause the word to end in a vowel, it may be made even before *s impura*: as, *egli è un po' stupido*; *non vo' studiare*.

The elision of the vowel in articles, in *che* and its compounds, and in monosyllable pronouns, before another vowel, is considered as a mode of orthography, rather than exceptions to the former of these restrictions.

VII. The contraction of a word is moreover admissible only when a stress or pause does not rest upon such word, but passes over to the next, as in *Signor Giovanni*; *sentir dolore*; *parlar chiaro*; *uom d'onore*: and the same in *amor lascivo*, *gran palazzo*, *direm così*, *andiam presto*: so that an inversion of the words would preclude the contraction, and make them necessarily become *lascivo amore*, *palazzo grande*, *così diremo*, *presto andiamo*.

In poetry nevertheless this rule of restriction is

infringed by contractions at the end of a verse and of a hemistich:

*Sogna il guerrier le schiere,
Le selve il cacciator.*—Metastasio.

*Non ne conobbi alcun, ma io m' accorsi
Che dal collo a ciascun pendea una tasca.*—
Dante.

*Così all' egro fanciul porgiamo aspersi
Di soave licor gli orli del vaso.*—Tasso.

It is to be observed that the curtailment of more than a vowel, as in *fanciul*, though permitted in the pause of the hemistich, is never made at the end of a verse.

VIII. Nor will every word terminating in one of the requisite liquids and a vowel bear curtailment, for very many would be thereby rendered extremely harsh: for instance, *vero*, when a substantive, is curtailable, but not when an adjective; thus we have, *non è ver che sia la morte il peggior di tutt' i mali*, (it is not truth); but we could not endure *questo è un ver Cristiano*, for *vero Cristiano*, (a true Christian).

Thus again, *nero*, *zero*, *amaro*, and others, cannot be curtailed without offence to a delicate ear; nor would it be right to imitate such poets, though classic, as have *dur* for *duro*, *sicur* for *sicuro*, *com* for *come*, *nom* for *nome*, or other

contractions awkward to utter, and unpleasing to hear.

IX. We may remark, in conclusion, that two out of the three classes of words by which Italian prosody is distinguished (*parola tronca*, *parola piana*, *parola sdrucciola*,) have a change in their prosodaic nature effected by any of these abbreviations.

The first sort, *parola tronca*, is accented on the last syllable, as *mercè*, *pietà*.

The second sort, *parola piana*, has the accent on the penult or last syllable but one, as *pane*, *gentile*.

The third sort, *parola sdrucciola*, has the accent on the antepenult or last syllable but two, as *amano*, *simile*.

Now by any curtailment of the termination, the *parola piana* becomes *tronca*, as in *pan*, *gentil*, because the accent then rests on the last syllable; and the *parola sdrucciola* becomes *piana*, as in *aman*, *simil*, because the accent then rests on the last syllable but one.

ADDITION OF A LETTER TO WORDS.

By an opposite licence, a vowel is sometimes added to words; but this licence is very confined.

When a word ending in a consonant, as *per*, *con*, etc. (of which sort the language has but a very small number,) is followed by one beginning with an *s impura*, an *i* may be prefixed to the latter for the sake of softening the sound, and thus, instead of *non spero*, *per stringere*, *di scoglio in scoglio*, it is more elegant to say *non ispero*, *per istringere*, *di scoglio in iscoglio*.

When the particles *a*, to; *e*, and; *o*, or; are immediately followed by a word beginning with a vowel, a *d* is commonly joined to them, (as already mentioned in treating of those particles,) in order to prevent the hiatus that would arise from such concurrence of vowels: for instance,

Ed ivi presso,—cominciarono le genti ad andare,—non fece motto ad amico, od a parente.

ACCENTS.

In Italian writing and print, marks or accents are more sparingly used than in French, and less sparingly than in English.

L'*accento acuto*, (') the acute accent, is placed over a vowel in words whose meaning varies with a difference of accentuation, which falls upon that vowel when marked: as,

Balìa, power, to distinguish it from *balia*, nurse, (accentuated on the first syllable).

Glà, contracted from *giva*, verb, to distinguish it from *già*, adverb; (the former a dissyllable, the latter a monosyllable).

L'*accento grave*, (') the grave accent, is placed upon the terminating vowel of every polysyllable word when that vowel is accentuated in pronunciation: as,

Carità, *mercè*, *però*, *virtù*.

It is accordingly used in the parts of verbs so accentuated, viz. in the third persons singular of the preterite, and first and third persons singular of the future indicative: as,

Parlò, *temè*, *sentì*; *parlerò*, *temerò*, *sentirò*; *parlerà*, *temerà*, *sentirà*.

Monosyllables consisting of two vowels which

make a diphthong take this accent over the last vowel: as,

Gid, *piè*, *ciò*, *giù*.

It is also taken by monosyllables having a single vowel, to discriminate the sense in which they are then employed from a different sense which they bear without the accent: thus are distinguished,

<i>è</i> (verb) is	from <i>e</i> conj.) and
<i>ch'è</i> (conj.) because	<i>che</i> (pron.) that
<i>dì</i> { (subst.) day {	<i>dì</i> (prep.) of
{ (verb) tell }	
<i>sè</i> (pron.) himself	<i>se</i> (conj.) if
<i>sì</i> { (adv.) yes {	<i>si</i> (pron.) him
{ (conj.) so }	
<i>là</i> {	<i>la</i> (art.) the, (pron.)
{ (adv.) there	her, it
<i>lì</i> }	<i>li</i> (pron.) them
<i>nè</i> (conj.) nor	<i>ne</i> (pron.) us.

La dièresi (") dieresis, has been adopted from the Spanish mode of printing, and introduced in late editions of the poets in Italy, to distinguish those words which *ie* and *io* are separate syllables from other words in which those two vowels are blended into a diphthong: as,

Conveniente, *furioso*, *oriente*, *punizione*.

These three different accents or marks do not prescribe any variety of pronunciation. The

first is not noticed in all Italian grammars, and the last perhaps in none. In the best dictionary of the language, (1) the second alone is used, as it also is in some of the best recent edition of poetry.

L'apostrofe (') the apostrophe, is a mark of contraction common in all the modern European languages to denote the elision of a vowel. Its employment in Italian, which is chiefly with the article, has been already rendered familiar.

The letter *h* in Italian may be considered under the present head, in the nature of a mark.

It is placed with a *c* and a *g* to denote that they are to be pronounced hard before *e* and *i*, the same as before *a* and *o*: as in

Cheto, chiaro, ghermire, ghirlanda.

This letter is moreover annexed to the few following words for the sake of grammatical distinction, without altering their pronunciation: viz.

Ho, hai, ha, hanno, (from avere)
Oh! ah! ah! deh! (interj.)
O, conj. ai, art. a, prep. anno, subst. de', art.

(1) Alberti's, 6 volumes, 4to. Lucca, 1797—1805.

EXERCISES.

LESSON VI.

THEY will be more diligent than this gentleman. This pen
signore.
is not so good as the other. You eat as much as your friend.
altro. mangiate il vostro
She is as much respected as the queen. They have as many
rispettata
1 2
soldiers as we had. Do not walk so much. We walk less
avevamo. = passeggiate passeggiamo
than you do. This (line of battle ship) is larger than the
=
(vascello da guerra) grande
Albion. You are older than my captain. They have not so
vecchio
much patience as is required to bring to an end a long and
pazienza necessario per condurre =
difficult undertaking. We did not find so many difficulties
impresa = incontrammo difficoltà (fem.)
as you thought. There are some persons who write better
credevate. Vi scrivono
than they speak, and there are others who speak better than
parlano ve ne
they write. Cicero was more eloquent than Antony. It
Cicerone eloquente Antonio. =

is better late than never. Friend, you hurt our cause.
nocete alla nostra causa.

Why? You speak with more zeal than prudence. There
Perchè? maggiore

is more hospitality in the provinces of a great kingdom than
ospitalità provincia regno

in the capital. The happy termination of this affair is more
felice conclusione affare

due to his sagacity and experience than to our
dovuto alla sua sagacità ed alla sua esperienza alla nostra

strength. The wine we drink is older than yours. He reads
forza, che beviamo del legge

more by day than by night. You are more foolish in your
di giorno di notte folle nella vostra

old age than you were in your youth. In the situation
vecchiezza non foste gioventù stato in

we are in, we have more to hope than to fear. Why are
cui = da sperare da temere.

you then more downcast than the others? The lesson you
depresso

are writing is easier than mine. He drinks more than
state scrivendo della mia beve

he eats. You sleep more than a dormouse. I take more
mangia dormite ghiro, so

exercise (in winter) than (in summer). (Were I) as wealthy
esercizio d'inverno d'estate. Se io fossi dovizioso

as Croesus I (would make) a better use of my riches
Creso farei = delle mie ricchezze

than (he did) of his. The richer a man is the more
non fece egli delle sue.

re covetous he is. The more I drink the more thirsty I
avaro bevo assetato

am. The voice of this lady is much more harmonious than
voce signora armonioso della
 yours. She is much handsomer than the duke's daughter.
vostra. bello

LESSON VII.

(The day before yesterday) I dined at the admiral's, whe-
avanti jeri pranzai dal
 re I enjoyed the company of Mr. R., who, according to my
godei compagnia il quale secondo la mia
 opinion, is the most learned man I have ever met.
opinione dotto che io abbia mai incontrato.
 His style in conversation is very plain and clear; his
Il suo stile conversazione semplice chiaro le sue
 ideas very high, and the strength of his argument irresisti-
idee sublime forza del raziocinio
 ble. (Speak to him,) he is very affable. This paper is
Parlategli affabile.
 very thin. The ink is very thick. He has written a very
sottile. denso. scritto
 long letter. He is a most virtuous man. The youngest of
virtuoso = giovane
 the sisters is not yet married. Mr. William is the tallest in
maritata. Guglielmo alto
 the regiment. The oldest in the assembly will decide the
reggimento assemblea deciderà
 question. He will travel with the richest man in Germany.
questione. viaggerà =

² Thou art the most ¹ careless young man I know. This town
trascurato = *che io conosca*.
 is very populous. A very violent storm threw six mer-
popolato. furioso burrasca gettò sei mercan-
² chant vessels on the ¹ southern ² coast of Sicily. Do not be
tile bastimento meridionale Sicilia. =
 vain though you are very handsome. The apricots you
vano sebbene albicocca che ci
 (sent us) last year, were very ripe. Do not eat
manduste l'anno scorso maturo.
 any peaches; they are unripe, and consequently very unwhol-
pesca = *acerbo in conseguenza mal-*
 lesome. Your servant is worse than ours. He behaves
sano domestico (adj) nostro. Si comporta
¹ worse than you do. He is a very upright man.
²
 (adv.) = *integro.*

LESSON VIII.

(What o'clock is it?) It is one o'clock. I think it
Che ora è *credo che*
 is two o'clock. (Look at) the sun-dial. (It is a quarter past
siano Guardate oriuolo a sole. = *sono*
¹ four.) The opera begins at half-past ² eight. We dine every
incomincia =
 day at four o'clock. I left the ball-room (at a quarter be-
uscii dalla ballo sala
 fore five) (It wants a quarter of six.) (It wants ten minu-
sono

tes of eight.) I (have seen him) at eleven. (What day
l'ho veduto a' quanti di
 of the month is this?) It is the first. Two line of
siamo del mese =
 battle ships arrived at Cadiz on the twenty-first of
arrivarono a Cadice =

² ¹
 last month. He died in Italy on the twenty-fourth of Fe-
scorso morì Italia
 bruary, one thousand eight hundred ad sixteen. The gover-
² ¹
 nor will be here on the first of next month. Malta the
= del prossimo —
 2d of March, 1838. Leghorn the 15th of August, 1838.
Livorno

I hope you (will stop and dine (with me) to-day. It
spero che starete a pranzo meco oggi.
 is now three o'clock, and (we shall sit down to
ci metteremo a
 table) in half an hour. The first time he speaks in that
tavola volta che parlerà quella
 disobliging way, I (will tell him) a few words. The last
scortese maniera gli dirò due o tre parole
 time I wrote to my father was on the 27th of May. I ha-
che scrisi =
 ve danced with her several times. He has invited me
ballato lei parecchio m'ha invitato
 twice, and I have dined with him only once. Na-
due volte pranzato lui una sola volta. Na-
 poleon (was born) at Ajaccio on the 15th of August, 1769,
poleone nacque in ——— =
 and died at St. Helena on the 5th of May, 1821. Charles
Sant'Elena = Carlo

the twelfth, king of Sweden, and Peter the great, emperor
Svezia Pietro grande
 of Russia, were two great men. Charles the fifth, king of
 Spain, and emperor of Germany was born at Ghent on the
Gand =
 twenty-fourth of February in the year one thousand five
 hundred. George the first succeeded Queen Anne. All
Giorgio successe alla Anna
 three perished on the scaffold. Both kings ascended the
perirono palco salirono sul
 throne in the same year. Both ladies were at the ball.
stesso

LESSON IX.

I saw your cousin dressed in an extravagant and buffoon-
vidi cugino vestito d' bizzarro buffo-
 like way. He had a large red hat, a pair of great green
nesco maniera
 spectacles, yellow (thick, ill-shaped shoes), and a small white
giallo scarpa
 umbrella. How pleasant that poor old man is, who (is walk-
Quanto lepido quel che passeggia
 ing) with the admiral. Go to the fair, if you wish to
Andate fiera volete =
 see the country laasses of the neighbouring villages. Poor lit-
vedere vicino villaggi.
 ple man! he deserves compassion. The young marchioness is
merita pietà.

gone to take a walk. When Jerusalem Delivered was
fare passeggiata la Gerusalemme Liberata uscì

¹ published, many pitiful rhymers, and even some men of great
alla luce molto anche
 merit began to talk rashly against it. Be gone, (thou
vaglia si misero ad abbajare contro di essa. Vattene
 despicable ignorant fellow,) do not disturb us with thy
ignorante = disturbarci colle tue
 (silly expressions.) I see a fine-little dog in the street. Why
sciocchezze vedo strada.

have you torn the small book? He is a (poor silly man.)
stracciato uomo.

That pretty girl sings like an angel. Whom (do you look
donzella canta come angelo. Chi cercate?
 for)? The colonel. Go to the square, you (will easily
colonnello. Andate in piazza. lo conosce.

find him out,) even in the middle of the crowd. He has
rete facilmente anche in mezzo alla moltitudine.

at his side a long bad sword, and wears a pair of (large
al fianco lunga spada tiene mu-
 frightful mustachios.) Rest on this little bed. I have
stacchi spaventevole. Riposate su

left the letters on the little table. Ring the bell,* This
Sonate

¹ little room † is fine. Throw that (bad paper) away. It is
bello. Gettate quella carta. =
 a (worthless book). O (inconsiderate young man,) you will
libro giovine vi ro-

* A bell used in the house is called *campanello*.

† *Camerino* means also a cabin in a ship.

ruin yourself, if you do not listen to the advice of an
vinerete se = ascoltate = i consigli d'un
 old friend of yours. Do not sleep in this (bad room;)
vostro vecchio amico. = dormite camera
 it is dirty and damp. Thou art a (tall handsome woman.)
= sporco umido. bel donna.
 What a * (nasty house)!
casa.

LESSON X.

Dear Marquis, do not complain of me. We have spoken
= vi lagnate
 to him. She has received from France two gold neck-laces,
collana
 which were sent to her by her husband. He sings and plays.
che cantare giuocare
 and I study and write. I was with him (two days ago.)
studiare scrivere. due giorni fa.
 We shall dine after you. ^{1 2 4 3} They never dined before us. They
dopo di non mai prima di
 declared war against us. He speaks ill of her. She speaks
dichiarare la contro di parlare male
 well of him. Speak to him. Do not speak to him. Let
bene
 us give him a reward. Let us not give him any thing. She
dare ricompensa. nulla.
 came to see us. Give me a loaf. Giving me a slice of
venire a vedere. pane. fetta

* *A*, placed after *what* in an admiring phrase, is not expressed in Italian.

9

do you honor. Scold him and her. Do not scold her. Do
onore. *Sgridare*

know him. Dress thyself. We cannot grant you leave.
conoscere. Vestire accordare la permissione

plemen with you. (He is very fond of speaking) of himself.
Gli piace molto il parlar

is not master of himself. They have been sent by you. He
padrone =

useful to yourself and (your neighbour).
prossimo (sing.)

LESSON XI.

guaranteed by England. We have not been guided by av-
guarantito *guidati*

from every danger; it made us victorious; it will assist us.
da rendere vincitore aiutare

Let us confide in it. Give some to the soldiers. Give him
confidare
 some. Do not give him any. Give them to me. Do not
 give them to me. Let us speak to him of it. Let us not
 speak to him of it. Send me some. Do not send me any.

Mandare

Here are some cherries; buy four pounds of them. How
ciliegia; comprare

many books will you buy? I shall buy twenty. They will
 thank you for it. Open the trunk, you will find three pair
ringraziare *baule,* *trovare*

of silk stockings in it. We shall go to court to-morrow. I
 hope we shall see there several Englishmen. Ambition has
 been fatal to him; but without it, he (could not have done)
senza di *non avrebbe potuto fare*

2

1

so many wonderful things. The love of glory produces great
ammirabile *produrre*

men: a man led by it is very useful to his country, and for-
guidato da *patria*

midable to his enemies. Who (is coming)? My guardian?
a'suoi nemico. Chi viene? tutore

Yes, it is he himself. There are some men, who think dif-
ferently. pensare

LESSON XII.

His house was built last year. It is larger than ours.
fabbricato *grande*

Your soldiers are better disciplined than ours. A friend of
 (adv.) *disciplinato*

EXERCISES.

11

mine will come here perhaps to-night; let me know it.
² ¹
qui forse stasera fare sapere

Whose boots are these? They are mine. The meadows
¹ ⁴ ² ³
Di chi stivale = prato
 are yours; the country-house, hers; and the olive-trees, mine.
casa di campagna ulivo

I am pleased with my servant, and yours. How does
contento di Come =

your father do? Your brothers know that you were with
² ¹
sta sapere eravate
 us. Speak to his wife, and mine. Her brother is not mar-
rimo-

ried. I shall send his letters to my friends, and yours. If
gliato

Your Excellency thinks proper to mention it to His
Eccellenza credere convenevole di farne menzione
 Majesty, here is the petition. He sacrificed his riches,
 health, and sisters to his ambition. She was beloved by
salute amato

her relations. The king, abandoned by his followers, ran
abbandonato sug-
 away from the field of battle. Whose seals are these?
gire campo battaglia sigillo

They are mine; (you are mistaken), they are my father's.
v'ingannate di

How can you be so unkind to a friend of mine? Two
potere tanto scortese verso

sailors of ours deserted last Monday. The surgeon cut off
² ¹
marinaro disertare chirurgo tagliare

² her left ¹ hand. A shot carried his ² two ¹ legs away. I have
sinistro palla portare via
 dislocated my shoulders. You break my heart. Go and
slogare spalla spezzare a
 wash your hands. She is washing her hands. Mind how
lavare sta badare
 you carve; you will cut your fingers. The executioner
trinciare tagliare boja
¹ cut their ⁴ heads off. The captain was speaking with Mrs. S.,
troncare
 and told her cousin to sit down. He will soon (squander
a di sedere. scialac-
 away) his property. My little sister is ill; let us go (and
quare malato a
 see her.)
vederla

LESSON XIII.

This penknife shall be given to your best pupil. These
migliore allievo.
 fables are written with elegance. This is the plain, in
favola pianura, in
 which that famous battle (was fought); this is the rivulet in
cui or ove celebre si dette ruscelletto
² which the enemy's ¹ leader (quenched his thirst); and these
nemico generale dissetarsi
 are the stones sprinkled (by the) blood of our people. Do
innaffiato del

not take those curtains away. This man ^{1 3 2} never keeps his
cortius *non mai mantenere*
 word. That man has been unsuccessful in his undertaking.
infelice

Speak no more to me of that man; he has deceived me, and
ingannare
 those who were recommended to him. He, who in his
raccomandato
 youth (gives himself up) to pleasure, and does not endea-
darsi in preda *procu-*
 vour to cultivate his mind, will in his old age be deprived of
rare

that relief which is afforded by study. Let us relieve him
solievo *recato* *sollevare*
 who, in his prosperity, threw a compassionate eye on those
gettare *pietoso sguardo*
 that were unfortunate. From that woman you will receive
² ¹
 good advice. From this woman you will receive nothing
consigli.(plu.) *non*

³ but mischief. I have seen him this morning, and
altro che danno.

¹ ²
 shall see him again this evening. Those men deserve
rivedere
 praise, who prefer the public interest to their own.
anteporre *proprio.*

Whose watch is this? It is mine. That coat of yours fits
stare
 you well. Those shoes of yours are not shining. Tell your
lustro

¹ ¹
 servant (to clean them again).
di ripulire

me to go on shore; but I have not received an answer ;

which hinders me from calling on those strangers. Confess
impedire di

candidly what you plotted against us. What a meritorious
tramare

¹
 deed !

LESSON XV.

Which of those pens will you give me? What does he
 say? I do not understand him. Pray, did you hear

capire Di grazia intendere
 what he told us? Who? Mr. N. No; I did not.
= io non l'ho inteso.

Who is at the door? Go and see. To what do you apply
applicare

yourself? What resolution has he taken? What is his
risoluzione presa?

name? What are his amusements? Whose rings are these?
divertimenti?

What have you done to-day? Whose writing-desk is that?
scrittojo

It is hers. Of what do I complain? On what do I
lagnarsi? Sopra

ground my hopes? Whom shall we believe? To whom
fondare A

have I offered an insult? In what country shall I take a
fare = paese

refuge? Which of the two will accompany me? Which
ricovero?

will remain? Under what star was I born? Who is (worse
più mal-

treated) by fortune than I am?
trattato =

LESSON XVI.

There are two generals at the head of the army, both of the
testa
same age; but one more brave than the other « Here are
the weapons, » said he, showing his sword and a poison; « I
arme la il
shall either conquer with this, or die by the other. » I have
o vincere o dell'
examined the trial of your unfortunate countrymen; the
processo compatriotto;
youngest were (led astray), and their punishment will not be
traviato castigo
so severe as that of the others. « Eat, drink, and live
merry, » said he to me. « I will have nothing else, »
allegramente
replied I to him « and wish to retire. » Respect
rispondere desiderare di ritirarsi.
other people's property, and be satisfied with your own.
contento del =
To speak of death, and die, are two different things. * Some
laugh, and some cry. If any person should know what
piangere

* This phrase, and others of the same nature, are expressed also
by *chi... chi*: as,

Chi dice una cosa, chi un'altra;
Some say one thing, some another.

you have done, you would no longer be considered a great
 $\text{più} \quad \text{riputato} =$

man. Why do you not make your troubles known to the
 $\text{1} \quad \text{1}$
esporre

Duke and his brother? Both can relieve you. I have re-
sollevare

ceived a great many civilities from Mr. Smith and his father,
sinezza

and am grateful to both for what they did for me. You will
di

meet at the banquet the English and French gentlemen, that
 $=$

are now in this island. Do not speak of politics to either
politica (sing.)

of them. I will send you back the peaches and wall-
 $\text{1} \quad \text{1}$
rimandare

nuts; both are of a very bad quality. We only have two
 $\text{1} \quad \text{4} \quad \text{2} \quad \text{3}$
soli

5
 enemies, and neither of them will be able (to do us any harm).
nuocerci.

$\text{1} \quad \text{2} \quad \text{1}$
 I have not given any reason to either of them to scandalize me.
 $= \text{motivo} \quad = \text{diffamare}$

Why then do they fly from me? They deceive one
fuggire = _ ingannare

another. They wish to die for each other.
volere

LESSON XVIII.

You are the protector of all our family. All my hope is in you. All his actions are guided by prudence and justice. I

da

see your (father-in-law) every day. The (mother-in-law)

suocero

suocera

writes every week to us. Her (daughter-in-law) has lost

settimana

nuora

a servant. You will hear every thing from the (son-in-law).

genero

We opened the gates of the church, and found every thing

aprire porta

spoiled by the rain and thunderbolt. Every body knows

guastato

fulmine (mas.)

me, and I know very few people. All the officers will be

poco gente.

assembled at ten o'clock, and each will receive the orders of the commander-in-chief. He has left ten thousand pounds

lira sterlina

to each brother, and six thousand to each sister. Whoever is kind and charitable, will be esteemed by his fellow-creatures.

simile.

2 1

With the consent of every body. That cruel man is hated

consenso

by every one. We have to pay two dollars each. Each of

dovere =

per

the ladies went away. In each case. His horses are arrived;

giunto;

each is saddled and bridled most sumptuously. He

sellato

imbrigliato

magnificamente.

(speaks ill) of any man whatever. His cuirass is so strong,
sparlare contro corazza

that he is protected against any sword whatever. Whatever
sicuro da

you may hear, be silent. This is the truth, whatever you may
 believe. He can speak with eloquence of any thing whatever.
 Now this is the justice of the king; that those who apply

ricorrere
 to him, whoever they may be, (are immediately admitted) to
si ammettano subito.

his presence. Come, whoever thou art, either a virgin or a
 goddess, do advise me who am an unhappy shepherdess.
consigliare = = =

Gentlemen, come at whatever hour you like; you will find
vi piace;

me at home. Be pleased to stay here (a short time) with me,
piacciavi di alquanto

and hide not from me what is become of her.
celare = mi checcchè

LESSON XIX.

We are hunting hares and rabbits, with which this little
cacciare di cui

island abounds. When you called the *Vetturino*, we were
 drinking your health. I shall not stir hence, and
alla muoversi di qui

I shall (look at) those who pass by. If he knows that you
osservare =

are arrived, he will be looking for you all over the town.
per =

I am examining the nursery in order to choose those plants,
semenzajo affine di

which, according to my opinion, will thrive in your orchard.

secondo allignare pometo.

When we were at Padua, we often went to see the professors

Padova, a

of that University. Caius Marius was born at Arpinum

Cajo Mario Arpino

from obscure and illiterate parents. He signalised himself

indotto genitore. distinguere

under Scipio, at the siege of Numanzia. The Roman ge-

Scipione, assedio —

neral saw the courage and intrepidity of young Marius, and

intrepidezza

foretold the era of his future greatness. The most celebrated

predire — grandezza.

temple of Mars at Rome, was built by Augustus after the

Marte in Augusto

battle of Philippi. Carthage was destroyed by the Romans

Filippi.

147 years before Christ. The memory of Adrian was as-

prima di Cristo. memoria Adriano sor-

tonishing. Did he breakfast with the French minister?

prendente. fare colazione

Did he tell you what my father wrote to the commissary?

commissario?

I have not had the pleasure of seeing your friends. If you

piacere (pres.inf.) =

2

1

ask six month's leave, the government will not grant it to

di sei mesi un congedo, governo

you. If you remain quiet, I will give you two beautiful

tranquillo,

prints. We shall retire at the hour (you like). As soon

stampa ritirarsi che vorrete.

as the dinner is over, I shall call on you. We shall
venire a trovare =
 talk of that when the captain is on board. He will go on
abbordo.
 shore after he has given a lesson to his pupils. Perhaps he is
 = *Forse*
 not gone to the play. Do not enter; perhaps he is busy.
teatro. *occupato*.
 Do not tire that man. Do not reply when I scold thee.
annojare

I have written this year (to my friends) in the ² East ¹ Indies.
agli amici che ho Orientale India.
 After he had considered a little while, he answered.
pensato

LESSON XX.

I wonder you should flatter that author so much. I
maravigliarsi *adulare*
 was surprised he could stand temptation. I (am
sorpreso potere resistere alla tentazione. *ho*
 afraid) you have disobeyed the orders. I fear he will die of
paura
 that disease. He is a good master: he always wishes that
malattia. *padrone;*
 his servants should be satisfied. I wish you may succeed in
 every thing. He (would have) me go with the general. I
vorrebbe
 allow that every one should tell me the truth, though it
permettere
 be displeasing. I will not allow you to neglect your affairs.
spiacevole. *trascurare*

I grant you that we are more lucky than he is. He or-
concedere =

dered that every officer should be on board at sun-set.
al tramontar del sole

Command that we should go and fight, and we shall obey.
battersi,

I do not doubt but you will approve of his measures. For
che non = *Per*

God's sake do not detain me : I must be (at the) ge-
l'amor del Cielo trattenere dal
 neral's at nine o'clock. It was necessary for us to be silent.

=
 It is better for him to be with me than with those (lazy fellows).
sfaccendato.

Is it possible for you not to follow our opinion ? It was
aderire a

just that he should fall, who was the cause of our evils. It is
male.

probable he will arrive here before the courier. Where is the
corriere.

² ⁴
 person who dares to contradict me ? There is no one who

² ¹ ¹ ²
 wishes to drink more. Find me any one who might help me
 in this work. I see nobody that knows us. If you know
 any body that has the intention to buy a house, send him to
di

my office. There is no man in the world I esteem more than
uffizio.

you. I think there was a philosopher who said that the
 world had been destroyed several times. (I think) he is called
mi pare

Francis. Thou art very incredulous : I do not wish to imitate thee. I believe I have a soul which is immortal. Send

me a soldier whom I can trust. This is the most difficult
di fidarsi.

¹
 passage I have ever met in this work.
passo opera.

LESSON XXI.

To forgive our enemies is a mark of a great soul. To

=
 know how to give seasonably is a talent few persons possess.
 Since you must (have an interview) with the artist, make
Giacchè abboccarsi
 him come (to my house). I cannot refrain from drinking
da me.

that wine, although the doctor has forbidden me to do it. I
medico vietare ==
 often see him walking with the Rabbins. It is necessary to
Rabbino.

pretend not to see. He would not see me any more. I hear
volle più
 them talking together. I never heard you slander your
discorrere dir male (genit.)
 neighbours. Let me alone ; I am not in a good humour.

Lasciatemi stare, di = umore.
 Though I have told him many times to stay at home, he
più volte starsene a casa,
 does not care to obey me. For all I am not his father, I do
Benchè gli

not leave off scolding him. He can dance. Can you swim?
nuotare
 I can; but I am not able to swim to-day, for I feel .
 = = *sentirsi*
 (without strength). I can dance one hour (without stopping,
sposato di seguito,
 and not feel tired for it). If you can (draw in colours), I
senza stancarmi. dipingere.
 pray you to make me a copy of this picture. Do not fail to
quadro.
 answer me by return of post. I always forget to (make an
col ritorno corriere. infor-
 inquiry) about it. The king ordered me to conclude a truce
marci tregua
 with the enemy. If you help me to effect the welfare of
effettuare bene
 my subjects, history will speak both of me and you. That
suddito, e
 man is enticing us to forsake virtue. That person is
allontanarsi da
 enticing you to swerve from the path of honour; but re-
deviare sentiero
 member you are a king. I apply myself to study from morn-
dalla
 ing till evening, and he plays the fool the whole day with
alla ruzzare
 the blackguards of the neighbourhood. He strives to sup-
monello mante-
 port his family (in a decorous way), and aspires to obtain
nere la decorosamente, procaacciarsi
 the esteem of every-body. I think I see in you the image of
Mi pare di
 your father, and I love you as tenderly as (I did him).
teneramente amai lui.

This professor teaches you how to live (like an honest man),
 = *da uomo dabbene*,
 both by his science and actions. He is a treasure to you;
con *tesoro*
 mind not to lose him. Glory excites the mind to perform
fare
 great deeds. I have been waiting for you all the morning to
azioni.
 take you to the governor's. He stood neutral in order not
condurre *restare*
 to (make us his enemies). I write to you these lines to ascer-
inimicarsi con noi. *riga accer-*
 tain the truth. (I shall call on you) to take leave. You
tarsi (genit.) *Verrò da voi* *congedo.*
 give us a great deal to eat and little to drink: I wish you
 would give us plenty to drink and little to eat. I have to
 pray you in favour of a friend of mine. My wife dissuaded
a pro
 me from going to Lucca baths. I hardly believe it. I had
 — *bagno. Io stento* (inf.)
 much ado to persuade him. For all he is assiduous to his
al =
 work, (he can scarcely get his livelihood). Go about your
lavoro, *egli stenta a vivere.* *Andate a fare i*
 business). He will not be long before he comes. It is non-
fatti vostri. *Non istenterà molto a* = *scioc-*
 sense to listen to what he says.
chezza *dare retta*

LESSON XXII.

The armies thou hast defeated, the nations thou hast sub-
sconfiggere, *sog-*

dued, the enemies thou hast forgiven, and the victory
giogare, ai quali tu

thou hast obtained over thy passion, render thee great in
avuta agli

the eyes of men. Taste that wine, and let me know
Gustare di sapere dire

whether it is good or bad. The rain has interrupted, this
se =

autumn, the works I had begun. After he had peeled
autunno, sbucciare or mondare

a pear, he made three parts of it, and gave one to me, another to the cavalier, and the third to his son. After you have
cavaliere, al =

curried the horses, give them the oats. I shall tell the
streggiare biada (sing.)

cook to give us to-morrow another dish of red mullets,
cuoco (= che triglia,

(since you liked them very much) to-day. The servant
giacchè vi sono piaciute molto familiare

having arrived at Genoa, having delivered the letters, and
= Genova, = dato

having signified the message, was with great joy received
= fatto imbasciata, festa

by the lady. Copy me the sentences which have been published
sentenza

to day. The evening having arrived, he took us back
= venuto, ricondurre

to our house, and remained with us till eleven o'clock.

= stare fino alle

LESSON XXIII.

The Greeks were feared by the Persians. I was always
Persiano.
 invited by him. If you do not go to the review they will
rassegna
 punish you. He was (stoned to death) by the mountaineers;
lapidato montanaro;
 but the chiefs of the murder were taken and hanged. They
capo omicidio impiccato.
 have shot the malefactors upon the ramparts. Passions are
fucilare malfattore muro.
 too much (listened to) by men. In summer time people
ascoltato D' estate =
 seldom dance in hot countries. When people are in
raramente caldo paese. si
 good health, they eat more at sea than on shore. They say
per in terra.
 you will be elected a member of the college. (It was ru-
eletto = Si sparse la
 moured) that the enemies had taken a fortress of the first
voce (subj.) fortezza
 class. (A report is spread) that a great deal of blood has
ordine. Corre voce
 been spilt on both sides. (I will not allow) people to sleep
sparso da parte. Io non voglio che =(sub.)
 (in day-time). A coward is despised. Cowards are despised.
di giorno codardo
 In the opera of (yesterday evening) they sang a very fine
— jersera
 duet. Two very pretty women were heard sing. The
duetto. vezzoso

theatre of San Carlos is so large, (that one does not hear
teatro Carlo che la voce non si sente
 people sing distinctly). They do not (show any regard) for
distintamente. = rispettare =

decency. They do not (show any respect) to the pro-
convenienza.(plu.) = rispettare =
 perty of others. When people bark a great deal, they do
abbajare

not bite much. In the dog-days we hear the grasshop-
= mordere poco. canicola(sing.) cicala
 per sing. We do not answer these letters to-day. It is
= a

called so in Italian. They put to the sword one thou-
così mandare a fil di spada
 sand people. They will not know you with this coat on.
persone. =

They will welcome us. People will hate thee. When
accogliere bene

we shave ourselves in haste, (we often cut our
radere fretta, sovente si fa un taglio al or nel
 faces). When we do sincerely repent our faults, we de-
viso. uno pentirsi suo fallo, =
 serve pardon. People got np quite stunned. They say a
tutto sbalordito. .

great many things of him. What do they say of him? Do
 they not speak well of him? Answer me. Let one read this
 author often; for one can derive a great deal of knowledge
trarre lume

from him. Some quails were seen two days ago, but now
 they do not see (any more) of them. They will give me the
più

charge of it. They will write to us about it. Thou
incombenza

wishest some snuff: we shall give you some. As they know
volere *Siccome*

you like rum, they will send you ten bottles of it. I have
 (dat.) *piacere*—

been spoken to in favour of that man. A great many
 (idle stories) have been said there. They have not yet spoken
fole

of a composition, but they will speak of it (before long).
agglustamento, *fra poco.*

When we have no time we cannot do much. One can live
molto.

well in this town if one has plenty of money to spend. I am
 sorry they have had no consideration for our age. They
riguardo alla

have not had the good sense to give him fair words. They
accortezza *buono*

grant you what you ask. Soldiers are forbidden to go out
vieture.

after the retreat. Men of war alone are allowed to enter
ritirata. Legno da guerra *approdare*

that harbour. I am not allowed time to dine.
in *dare*

LESSON XXIV.

What do you think of the weather? Shall we be able to
 =(dat.) *sembrare*

go out without any danger of getting wet? It has rained,
 = *bagnarsi?*

raining, and will rain till the evening. It is cold, and has
 snowed this morning. The storm has hindered me from

sleeping. It lightened, thundered, and hailed two hours ago.
It has not thawed this week. I never did care for him.

non mai di

It had already grown dark, when some robbers came to pay
ladro fare

me a kind visit. It has always concerned me to better
visita gentile. di migliorare

your condition. Divers misfortunes have befallen us. Tell
sventura accadere

me whether he is come in time. My master is not yet gone
a

out; if you wish to speak to him, come up. We had entered
salire.

the city before the magistrates were taken and thrown into a
dungeon. Several have perished in crossing the river.
prigione oscura. valicare

He was born in misery. Although he is become wicked, I

am in hopes to ¹ call ¹ him back to virtue. He fainted in
ricondurre

my arms. The day has at last appeared which will crown us
with glory. The symptoms of a relapse having disappeared,
di rioaduta

the physician prescribed for him sea-bathing. He has re-
= (dat.) *i bagni di mare.*

mained alone. This watch-chain has never belonged to me.
Since he has stayed here in the bad season, it is just that he
should remain in the good. The magician has touched the
earth, and this vein of water has immediately sprung up.
=

Petrarca has pleased, pleases, and will please a great many

people. Your speech has displeased the king. Do not drink

any of this wine, it (has turned sour). The horizon is be-
inacettire. *rabbu-*

come dim, and threatens disasters. Companions, let us not-
jarsi *per-*
 lose courage. He has not chosen to come with his children.
dersi d'animo. *volere*

I have not been able to go along with them. I have been
 = *do-*
 obliged to upbraid him. (He must have been vexed)
vere rimproverare *doversi rattristare*
 for the death of the cardinal. We were not able to write to
della

him. They have not walked. We have walked over a
passaggiare *camminare per*
 bad road. Poor man, how feeble he is grown! Go and
strada *quanto illan. = guidire!*
 pay a visit to my god-son who has been taken ill.
figlioccio *ammalarsi.*

We sank this week two enemy's frigates, and three
nemico = (adj.)

² line-of-battle-ships. What a misfortune! sixty fishing
vascello ² *pescareccio*

¹ boats have sunk near the harbour, and all hands
barca *tutta la gente* (sin.)
 perished. He who has run over many seas, will be able to

=
 give us information of that enormous fish called the whale.
smisurato = *balena.*

We ran to the place whence the voice came out. Let us lower
luogo onde *ammainare*
 the sails; the wind has increased. I have brought up and pro-

ected him like my son. The hunters have not yet come
down the mountain. No sooner had he gone down stairs,

dal monte. Non prima le scale,

2 3 1
than the conspirators fell upon him, and murdered him.

addosso gli, trucidare

1 2 6 3 5 4 6
Having heard how clever this Florentine goldsmith was in
valere Fiorentino orfice

the art of nealing, I made him come (to my house). Had my
niellare, da me.

prayers (been of any avail), they would have been readmitted
valere

into this assembly. Ye, who have lived a comfortable and
agiato

voluptuous life, prepare yourselves to lead a hard and
molle menare stentato

painful one. He died gloriously as he lived. I reached the
doloroso giungere all'

gate, tired and panting, and after having ascended the first
uscio, stanco anelante, salire

stairs, I rested a few minutes upon that plain space.
scala, (sing.) pianerottolo.

He went up first, and I followed him. They have not yet
prima, seguitare

come up to that high degree of glory to which their father
grado

arrived. A great confusion has followed. That warrior,
whose steps you have followed, has died to-day of the wound
pedata

he received on the head. The army has taken the field. The
alla sortire in campagna.

besieged (have made two sallies), and twice they have been
assedati sortire due volte,
 repulsed. Heaven has elected thee to so great an honour.
respingere.

2 1 2

You have been allotted a surprising courage and invincible
sorprendente
 firmness. After mass I departed from him. And he would
fermezza la messa partirsi

2

have parted in two the face of Roger. Let us shun ill-bred
Ruggiero. scostumato

1 2 1

acquaintances, as one does a poisonous serpent. He has run
pratica, serpe.

away from me. I never ran away before the enemy. This
innanzi al

medicine has cured me, and will cure you also. I have not
 yet recovered. Ask those ploughmen if the emperor has
bifolco

passed the river. We have passed our time (in a pleasant
piacevol-
mente.

Two gentlemen have just gone down stairs; overtake
or ora smontare le scala; raggiugnere
 them, and give them these keys. The prime minister has
chiave.

just alighted from his horse, and (taken his way) to the
 = *avviarsi verso*

palace. How can you believe a man who has fed you with
di

vain hopes? Good by to thee, I am going to water
Riman tiin pase, or addio, abbeverare

the flock that has been grazing the whole day in the adjoining grassy valley. Have you dispatched your business?
greggia *vici-*
na erboso *affare* (plu.)

(I am struck with horror) in telling it you. I saw the cruel
Raccapricciarsi *nel*

³ ¹
 blow darted: he staggered a moment, then fell; and the
colpo vibrare: (inf.) *traballare*

blood, which gushed impetuously out of his wound, stained
dalla *macchiare*
 these very clothes of mine. They went to the inn, where
 = *panni* *albergo*,

they found that valiant soldier who had dismounted several
prode

hussars. Our goats have grazed. Cheer up, my friend, the
ussaro. *capra* *Animo,* =

enterprise came to a happy issue.
sortire il desiderato fine.

LESSON XXV.

He speaks of having written to me a long letter about the
dire *intorno*
 marriage of our grand-daughter: I answer that I have not
matrimonio *nipotina;* = *di*(inf.)
 received it. He asserts that I was spoken to about this af-
assicurare
 fair at Mr. N.'s: I do not recollect it. Some would (make
volere vender

me believe that the moon is made of green cheese), and think
lucciole per lanterne

I am a (hair-brained man); but they will repent it. They
smemorato;

will perceive too late, that the grand-father of Catherine
troppo tardi, *avolo di Caterina*

is not an old fool; and that nothing should be done
vecchio rimbambito; *dovere*

by his relations without consulting him. I have been informed
saputo

you have profited by the lessons given to you by Mr. N.; I
 am glad of it. You will know before long the desire I have
godere *fra poco*

of being useful to a brother, who resembles me in his con-
rassomiglia *con-*

duct. He saw her at the public walk, and immediately
dotta. *passaggio*,

fell in love with her. He fell in love with my agent's daugh-
² ¹

ter two months ago, and he will marry her next month.
il

You laugh at me; but know that I will make you blush for
sapere (inf.)

² ¹
 what you have done. He does not come to see us (any lon-
più

ger). Do not wonder at it; for he does the same thing ever
 with some of his old friends. Be well pleased with what
antico

I give you, and avail yourself of my advice. This man in-
consiglio.

termeddles with other people's business, and does harm to
affare, (plu.)

a great many with his bad tongue. If I understood precious

37

= giojellicre.

sculptura.

2

Olandese

1

sala

adornare

abbisognare.

bastare

sfrenato

1

3

4

5

bambino

3

(dat.) *parere che* = *alla* =

partirsi

al far del

giorno.

ments, but not from thee. He ran away from home. This

is the hour in which wild beasts go out of their dens. I shall

fiera = *tana*.

2 1

obey your orders as a faithful servant ought to obey his
deve ==

master. Those two brothers, who killed one another, (were
il padrone.

brought into the world) by you. My happiness depends
naquero

upon you. Very great disturbances arose from that assas-

turbolenza nascere *assas-*

sination. My brother does not like these Indian sauces.
sinio. *Indiano salsa*.

The vizier outlived the grand seignior three years. Leo the
visire *gran signore* *Leone*

Tenth succeeded Julius the Second on the 15th of March,
Giulio =

1513, and died on the 1st of December, 1521. Say what you

=

will, he is (a good-natured man), and is not offended

di buon indole, or di buona pasta,

at any thing. He fell in with (some people) who seemed to

nulla *alcuni* =

be soldiers. I fell in with a great many who were begging

= *accattare*

from door to door. Come along, do trust to me. I do not

uscio in = =

trust you (any more). When I think of the ingratitude of
pù.

my people, life is a burden to me. He lives upon meat.

venire in fastidio. *carne*.

Live upon vegetables for a week. The poor people of the

vegetale *gente*(sing.)

neighbouring mountains live generally on potatoes, rye
vicino patata, segala
 bread, and milk. Who has stolen thy purse? He always
latte borsa?
 steals my pens. Hide it from her. I do not hide it from
 you. Do not hide from us the answer of the king. He took
 away from me all the English paper that I had bought a
 week ago.

LESSON XXVI.

He has learnt by heart exactly two hundred verses. Faith,
a mente
 (I shall pay thee off for it). He is gone out this instant. It
me la pagherai.
 is actually so. This town, which thou seest now so rich, was,
 in times of yore, a shelter to the poor of the province. I
il ricovero dei
 cannot go forward, I am tired. Go on with your discourse.
 As we shall mention hereafter. Let him go before. I would
fare menzione
 rather forfeit all my property. We were formerly members
perdere bene.(plu.)
 of the same college, and also good friends. We have left him
 behind. He will be more cautious for the future. Let us
guardingo
 finish our affairs, and we shall dine afterwards. (I might
desinare Allora
 then have been ten years old). He has never recovered since
poteva io aver dieci anni. riaversi
 that. Let us go gently. You will do this at leisure. Send
Mandare

for him and me, and for those also who were present. I
per

have not yet examined the question. Some have little, some

Chi = poco,

much. Come very early. These ear-rings are by far finer

per tempo orecchino

than yours. He did me many times the honour (to call
di venire a

on me). He is not here; look for him somewhere else. At
trovarmi.

least I shall be in a short time entirely recovered. It is not
guarito.

an easy thing to understand fully some passages of Dante.
passo —

To-day I am somewhat better. We have eaten enough. Do
stare (adv.)

what you are ordered with punctuality, or else you will be
chastised. He told me by word of mouth that there were no
castigato.

further orders. He has always spoken openly to me. The
ulteriore

physician has allowed him to go about in the cool of the
al fresco

morning. Recollect to go on softly in this affair. Since
= negozio. Giacchè

you wish to talk to Mr. N., let us go below. Your looks are
sguardo

always fixed above. (He looks at him from head to foot),
ben ben lo squadra,

and says, « it is he himself. » He is entirely recovered. They
dress after the German fashion. Who is that man dressed
vestire Tedesco

after the manner of the ancients?
antica?

LESSON XXVII.

Surely I prefer staying on board (to playing at billiards)
di starmene che giuocare al bigliardo
 on shore with those gentlemen. There were one thousand
 2 1
 men or thereabout. The assailants were nearly two hun-
 = *assalitore incirca*
 1
 dred and fifty. He works continually. I do beseech you to
 =
 open the door, in order that I may be sheltered
accioochè potere(subj.) stare al coperto
 there within. First I heard the daughter speak, then I saw
Prima (inf.)
 him (rising and sitting down) in that place. He will arrive
levarsi e porsi a sedere
 there at midnight. Go into my garden when you like.
volere.
 There you will find some exquisite fruit, and flowers of
frutto,(pl.)
 the sweetest smell. He was warned of it before. He had
grato odore.
 forbidden me the day before to go out. Do not fear, for I
dì chè
 have said so many good prayers a little while ago, (that we
che non
 need not be afraid). The enemy left the frontiers where they
ci bisogna temere.
 had assembled shortly before. For the future he will be very
ridursi
 severe. My son fell and broke his leg. I have not had a

moment's rest since. I wish you would have great patience with this man. He is very tiresome, (and fond of speaking *noioso, e gli piace molto il*, or *di* of his own affairs); perhaps he will come back to-morrow, *parlare de'suoi affari*;

and give you a description of his estate. He had three soldiers *descrizione* *podere*.

diers before and three behind. What art thou doing? What dost thou think of? Why dost thou still look be-

= *Perchè, or che* = *pure*

hind? Do not turn backwards. This business is related differently by the duke. He will also do that out of spite. If thou likest this cottage and the banks of this river so much, come and reside here. How will you have me speak to *abitare* = *che io* (subj.)

him? Tell them so. How do your brothers do? They are tolerably well. Really he did thoroughly examine all these papers. His father goes frequently to church; he, on the *scrittura*.

contrary, is never seen there. I tell you frankly you ought to behave better: go within, and apologise to- *fare un'apologia, or doman-*

him. One lives well here within. Do not go too far *dare scusa.* *qua* *troppo*

in. Make these sums be equally divided between them. *che* (subj.) *fra di*

He is lately come to this country: we perceive it. You *arrivato* *accorgersi ne.*

have been till now against our plans. I sometimes succeed *1 3 2*
contrario a *Mi* *riesco*

in speaking to him: be certain I shall praise you to him. *di* (inf.) *lodarsi di* *a lui*.

Why do you treat us (so barbarously)? We are men after
con tanta barbarie?

all. Let him live according to his fancy; (I do not trouble
non mene
 myself about it). He was out the whole night. I shall take
preme. stare

a carriage, and go to see that palace which you praise to me
carrozza,

as a very beautiful building, both within and without. I
per tanto = e

see he has been trying to make me do what (I never
è andato cercando = = che io faccio io non
 would, that is,) to tell all his villany.

vollim mai fare, cioè, che io racconti cattività. (plu.)

LESSON XXXVIII.

It is already three o'clock, and you have not yet shaved
radere
 yourself. The night is now approaching, let us go and sup.
avvicinarsi,

This man was formerly a Christian, and now he worships
or adorare

Mahomet. What do you mean, Henry? This is not in-
Maometto. voler dire, Enrico?

deed what you said to us (you had done). (Let it be now
d'aver fatto. Or sia

what it may), I am not ³ ⁴ ¹ ² the only one that grows old. I do
che può, = non già = solo = = invecchiare. =

not ² ⁴ ³ wish you to abandon your country, and (live a mi-
non già che = (subj.) andiate

serable life rambling about the world). Nor do I now (take
tapinando per lo mondo. *Nè* = or *ripi.*

back) what I granted you formerly. And not very far from
gliare

the place where the sportsman was, the dogs began to (ran
se.

after) two roe-bucks. The little farm of this industrious pea-
guire capriuolo.

sant is not much more cultivated than that of our steward. If
fattore.

you have nothing to do, sit down; he will not be long com-
a

2 1 3 4 7 8 6 5

ing. It is not long since the physician came here. John,
che Giovanni,

who expected a conclusion quite contrary to this, as he heard
 him say so, was the happiest man that ever existed. You
essere.

have sometimes called at that house, and there (spoken
stato avete parlato

ill of me). I? Never. Did you see him in company with
contro di me. di

those gentlemen? Never. He married
sposare, or prendere per moglie

that (poor worthless woman) against my will. I shall eat to-
donnicciuola

day to my taste. As he was going down stairs, he heard a
 voice crying out for help. He is always below. He will
gridare = =

without failing give a sumptuous dinner. He is without
lauto banchetto.

doubt the best general of the age. Upon my faith I do
di questa secolo.

love you, my dear son, (as much as I do myself). As it
quanto me = stesso.

pleases the Lord, who is in Heaven, and thence governs the
Signore, reggere

universe. He shut us up in a small room, and ordered
rinchiudere = cella,

^{1 3 4 2}
 us not to go out of it. Then I saw a ship (in the offing).
che non = (subj.) indi. per l'alto mare.

On the 13th of August he made a strong speech against his
 = *aringa*

^{2 1}
 enemies, and a few days after he died. You will find there-
a pochi dì indi = là in-

about a limpid brook. He has a wish to do good,
torno limpido ruscello. = desiderio del bene,

and is besides very rich. He was for a long time in prison.

He spoke at large on the properties of that plant. And that
 = = =

gentleman, who had taken me there, said to me, « Do not
menare

fear. » This kingdom is by far more powerful than the other.
 (He was not at all abashed) at so sharp an answer; on the

Non si spaurì mica per brusco =
 contrary, with the most gentle (and prettiest words) in the
dolci = paroline del

^{2 1 3}
 world, he entreated her again to sing. We are not

pregare che (subj.) = non mica
 I blind, nor deaf; your behaviour is known to us. While I am
cieco, nè sordo; andamento(pl.) noto

speaking, time flies away. He said that he wished more
fuggire.

than ever to be a friend to the warrior. He would never

trust me to any body. I am swimming in a sea which has

neither bottom nor shore. He is not mad, but certainly
riva. — non no sù

extravagant. He answered no. Do not answer me no.
stravagante.

Have you broken the looking-glass? No, sir. Should you
rompere

want any thing, write to us immediately. Nothing can root
sradicare

that unfortunate propensity for gambling out of his heart. He
infelice passione giuoco dal

did not sleep at all last night. So violent was the assault of
forte assalto

the first division, which cruelly harassed the left wing of the
divisione, straccare

enemy, that the battle lasted but a few minutes. So atrocious

a crime was not committed even in the ages (of barbarism).
misfatto barbaro (adj.)

He ran away secretly. This legislator is undoubtedly severe,
legislatore

and merciful: severe to those who persist in vice, and
clemente: contro essere ostinato

merciful (to them that are misled).

verso i traviati.

LESSON XXIX.

We shall now begin this work. He has just now vi-
dare principio a lavoro.
 sited the barracks. Sometimes he promises, sometimes he
quartiere.
 threatens. She is always the same. Now thou shouldst no
devi
 longer complain. We are at the end of our journey at last.
più (inf.)

2 1

It is time at last (to conform one's self) to public opinion. I
d' uniformarsi

1 2

shall dine to-day at your house. Men are now-a-days
da voi d'

liable to the same passions. Let me know whence thou
soggetto
 comest. Whence do they come? Where are the muskets?
 (subj.) *schioppo?*

He was very much pleased. He had thirty regiments of ca-
 valry, and sixty of infantry: he had moreover in the harbour
 a great number of ships. These pictures are placed perfectly
nave. situato

well. Rather to die than be disgraced. Who arrived first?
 = *disonorato.*

I would sooner see him killed than conquered. He acts
vinto.

1

worse than he speaks. A lame and most wretchedly dressed
 (adv.) *dire.*

2
man. His ancestors were unfortunate, and he is likewise persecuted by fortune. I have not done it on purpose. That fine young man speaks always to the purpose. Say no-
leggiadro

1
thing preposterously. He goes there openly. It is publicly
si dice

1
reported that you gave him a (box on the ear). The laws are
schiaffo.

not properly applied. The first Bashaw committed a great
— *Bascià usare* = *non*
many extortions, and the (present one) does precisely
poco(adj.) angheria, = *questo*

the same thing. The pupil, without showing himself at all

1 3 2 4 5
angry, said he would come. He is not dead. If
crucciato, *non punto*

2 1
you wish me well at all, and desire to save me from
volere di bene punto, *campare*

2
death, you will do what I shall tell you. He has no con-
di

1
science at all. Tell me, as near as possible, how many men
you lost in those skirmishes. He is nearly ruined. If we
scaramuccia.

were happy in former days, that must make us fear for the
ciò dovere(inf.)

future. I am almost decided to marry. And afterwards
avvenire. *ammogliarsi.*

thou wilt see those who are pleased in the fire, because they
hope, when it is time, to go to the (blessed people). Hence
beate genti.

we can see the hill. He opened a window, and thence he
poggio.

threw himself into the water. I saw a great many people
arrive during this time. And he arrived at that time. Make
haste, sir. He will be here this evening, and do quickly
what you like. Come back soon. Speak low. We shall
cene

go to ² the ¹ garden very slowly. Daughter, walk gently. He
andremo

will be three days at most. They are yellow, and for the
stare

most part made in this way. He is mostly at home. We
guisa. *in casa.*

for the most part see each other in the prince's box. He
palco.

took me aside and made me read this paper. Put by this
trarre *foglio.*

money. He put his sword into the scabbard, and left him
fodero,

pierced through. They are for the most part avaricious. Love
trafitto

was prompting him on one side, and honour (on the other).
istigare *dall'altra.*

Your treasures are partly exhausted. I leave you to-day.

Who knows? perhaps we shall ¹ see ¹ each other again some-
rivedere *ci*

where. Tell him from me to come up here. When we are
in the grave, people will seldom speak of us, and never of
him. He seldom goes out. We hear now and then some
news that rejoices us. I often fall in with him;
notizia(plu.) *rallegrare*

sometimes at the fountain; sometimes in the wood. Thou

wilt sleep here below whenever thou likest. I remain
desiderare starsene

here by myself, and as love prompts me, sometimes I make
invitare

rhymes and verses, sometimes I gather flowers and herbs.
Come here. There he embraced me for the last time. Where
are the strangers lately arrived? Where does he live?
stare di casa?

Opposite.

LESSON XXX.

Surely he has lost (his senses). Do you speak in earnest?
la testa.

It is true that thy tutor is a man of great understanding, but
ajo senno,
he is often obstinate, and will never act according to my ad-
fare

vice. If you (take my advice), you will be happy. He
farete a mio senno,
sent a messenger to us immediately. Since Heaven wishes
Giacchè

that I should be unhappy for ever. Do quickly what I
tell you. The elector has signed the sentence just now. Go
elettore

quick. Let us make haste, gentlemen, it grows late. Those
farsi

who come late shall dine in the other room. They esteem
stanza.

you still. Now and then we see Turks, Greeks, and Armenians arrive. He (is found) every where. We go several
no trovati

times up and down. The chambermaid, of whom I have
cameriera,

spoken above, concealed only my plate and jewels, and
argenteria gioia,

left the house to the mercy of the robbers. The sea was
discrezione

agitated and boisterous, and three boats went down. I have
sconvolto tempestoso,

eaten too much. Love found me entirely unarmed. Do not
 give us any more, we have got sufficiently. They live spar-

=

ingly. As we have often told you. I shall invite those of
 the opposite party and also your uncle, who is in truth of
partito anche

the same way of thinking. He left me alone on purpose.
maniera

1

1

He does openly what I should be even ashamed to do se-
anche arrossire

cretly. Truly thou makest me laugh. I speak to you of him
 in the morning and evening, and you give me the same an-
 swer every time. All those strangers that are looking at you
 with admiration are lately arrived. At last I have persuaded
 him. Whom are you looking for? Mr. L. He lives just by.
 Look at it close. They were only three in number. I will

= =

do it willingly. Will you drink a glass of wine with me?

3

With much pleasure. So weak is the thread to which my
filo cui mio

² ⁴ ¹
 painful life hangs, that if another does not help me, it
la gravosa attenersi, altri = aiutare
 (will soon be) at the end of its course. She could not cry
fia tosto a = riva suo corso.
 out, her throat being so tight. Tell him yes. Ought I to
stretta. Debbo
 remain a widower? Yes, answered his friends. And thou
= vedovo? = =
³ ¹ ² ⁴
 wishest (nothing else but) my esteem? Nothing else. Yes,
volere nè altro che Non altro.
 yes, I give it all to thee.

LESSON XXXI.

I was reading near the master. The aunt was at the side
 of the bride. There were several warriors by the pavilion.
padiglione.
 I do not abandon you; I am always near you. I have no
 money about me. The dogs came out furiously barking at
uscirono con gran furia addosso
 the poor man. Like a man who is dreaming. They act like
sognare.
 men who (are afraid) of him. He put the cradle at the side
temono cuna
 of the bed on which he used to sleep. I have desired the
pregare
 widow to excuse me to you. I received these papers before
 his death. He arrived before day-light. The French built a
 battery opposite the camp of the Spaniards. What I do is
batteria Spagnuolo.

nothing to what I owe you. I shall be obliged to see him before dinner. He confessed his crime before the judge. I shall read my dispatches before my departure. He challenged
dispaccio *partenza.* *sfidare*
 two enemies before the whole camp. I always see them about him. The country round about Florence is beautiful.
Firenze

LESSON XXXII.

We have received from them about ten thousand florins
fiorino
 of gold. He wrote a satire against us. Thou art a strong
satira *saldo*
 shield against misfortunes. I asked of him whether what had
scudo
 been said against him was true. Within my breast sounds
risonare
 a voice that (breaks my heart). So within a cloud of flowers
uccorare.
 a lady appeared to me under a green dress. I heard some
 = *ammanto.*
 woman behind me who was talking of us with her companions. We shall remain on this side of the river till sun-set. The Russians are till on the other side of the Vistula. After
Vistola.
 many (claps of thunder), a very big and thick hail be-
tuoni, *spesso gragnuola*
 gan to fall. He ruled over every place except this city.
signoreg- giare

I beg of you to accompany me as far as the gate of the town.
Do not set out till spring. He was covered with mud from

di fango

head to foot. I found him (almost dead) outside the walls.
semivivo

Out of this assembly, cowardly people. Thou art beside thy-

=

self. I am beside myself. She was out of (her wits). I
senno.

fell in with him as I was walking along the river. This ex-
incontrarsi =

cepted, every thing you ask shall be granted to you. While the
ambassadors were speaking, I was opposite to the king. He
will direct his course towards the capital. Not far from the
cammino

wood you will see a river. The waiter's wife was not far
from that palm-tree when her daughter fell senseless.

palma

senza sentimento.

LESSON XXXIII.

2 1

Why do you not stay an hour longer? Look at the sun,
altro? Guardare =
which is not yet at the middle (of its course). I came back
cielo.

almost in the middle of the day. He met us half way. In
a mezzo.

the middle of the summer. He will be here within a few
=

days. I shall do it for two thousand Venetian sequins. He
Veneziano zecchino.

succeeded beyond my expectation. They were not farther
riuscire speranza. lontani

than two miles from the town. As for me, (I am pleased
oltre miglio sono contento

with my lot,) and do not complain. There is no person
della mia sorte, rammaricarsi.

in the world so wretched as I am. He lives on the square
dolente =

over against the coffee-house. According to what they write
 to us, we shall not be able to pull this evening. All

fare una remigata
 appeared without arms. Go and tell him that he will be able
 to terminate his accounts without us. The Christians sur-
conto

rendered, on condition that their lives should be saved
salve le persone

They gave back to that power all it possessed before the
rendere = potenza

war, but two islands. (Having gone on board the galley),
Montati sopra la galera,

they began to row; and went away. It will be ne-
dare de'remi in acqua, via.

cessary for you to go up a tree. These evils will fall upon
piombare

us. (As I was) on the walls of the castle, I saw two armed
Stando

¹
 men under a tree. You will find it under the table. I was
 looking around on the grass. He hid himself in a

nascondere
 small cottage between the moor and the hill. (To say it
palude Per dirla

between ourselves), he hates you. He went over to Eng-
fra di noi. Passare = in

land, and in a poor dress he took his way towards London.
Show thyself humane to us who have always loved thee.

benigno

His companions will be this evening near Rome. Stay near
Roma.

me, and fear nothing. I have a little cottage near the sea.

GENERAL EXERCISES ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

The place (in which) I was writing was near the room
luogo ove

where he used to dine. I sat down by him. A person
assidersi

that stood at my side said to me: « What kind of a man are
= = =

you compared to him? » I saw a most beautiful shepherdess
asleep on a green meadow by the fountain, and two of her
dormire

1 1
companions (were) likewise asleep (at her feet). He called
dormire appiè di lei.

on me, and stood for a quarter of an hour at the foot of the
bed. Marseilles, an ancient and most noble town, is, as you
Marsiglia,

know, situated by the sea-side in Provence. I promise you
posto sopra marina Provenza.

upon the faith, and (by the) love I hold to you, as to
per lo, or pel portare come
my lawful sovereign, that within a few days I shall be with
legittimo

you. The king of Jerusalem, in company with Erminia,
d' ———

placed himself on a high tower to observe the camp of the
mettere

Crusaders. All this country is under one monarch. They
Crociato. paese

went at sun-set on board that ship, whence they took away
su per portare via

a great many trunks full of money and precious stones.
 Alas! where have I left thee? I left my sheep with
Oimè misero! tra

rapacious wolves. She said these words within herself.
rapace lupo.

Turn towards us. Being fed, fostered, and grown up on
nudrire, allevare, crescere =

a wild and lonely mountain within the walls of a poor
salvatico solitario

cell, he lamented day and night the loss of the only friend
cella, piangere perdita solo

that fortune had granted him from his infancy. Among
concedere = infanzia.

the various things ² a father of a family ¹ delights in, is to
che dilettare = d'

have in his own estates a great number of useful trees, (under
 = *buono all'*

the shade) of which his children *ma* in summer-time
ombra potere

divert themselves. All spoke well of him; but the Sici-
trastullare

lian amongst others praised him very much. The Earl
lodare Conte

(having got on horseback), arrived after the third day at his
montato a cavallo,

friend's (country house). Sit squat behind a rock, (in
villa. Giù t'acquatta scoglio,
 order that) the fiends who are on the other side of the bridge
acciocchè diavolo
 may not perceive thee. I surrendered (on condition that my
vedere salva
 life should be saved). In the dusk of the evening) the firing
la vita. All'imbrunire fuoco
 ceased on both sides. The enemy retired in good order,
cessare da ambo parte, ritirarsi
 but left on the field of battle eight thousand men dead and
tra
 wounded. (If I do not mistake, or with due respect to truth).
ferito. Se non m'inganno, or salvo il vero.

LESSON XXXIV.

So that I believe now that mountains and high shores,
Si che omai spiaggia
 rivers and woods know (what the natural disposition
selva sapere (subj.) di che tempra sia
 of my life may be) which is hidden from others. But alas!
la mia vita celare = altrui. lassol
 the (blooming vallies) are of no advantage to me: I do on
= fiorir di valli non valere (3d p. sin.)
 the contrary cry in fine and rainy weather, in cold
piangere al sereno ed alla pioggia, ed a' gelati
 and gentle breezes. I knew her again by her face and
ed a' soavi venti. riconoscere al = volto
 speech, which has often comforted my heart
parola, or favella, racconsolata

Springs, trees, and winds, the pretty little birds, flowers, plants, and fishes do speak of love. Flowers, leaves, herbs

=

fronda,

shades, caverns, streams, gentle breezes, hidden vallies, high
ombra, antro,

chiuso

2

1

hills, and sunny plains, etc. Let kings, princes, generals,
colle, aprico piaggia,

and any person appointed to command, listen to my
eletto

ascoltare =

speech. I cannot see by myself, (which is the most wrong
discorso.

*da**chi più in questo si*

in this); nature allotting to a noble mind a vile
pecchi; apparecchiando ad uno nobile animo

body, or fortune allotting a vile profession to a body endowed

=

*mestiere**dotato*

with a noble mind. Having taken all the money he could,

*d' =**potere,*

he secretly went away without saying a word to a friend or

fare = motto =

relation. I sometimes stop where a lofty pine or a hill

*arrestarsi**alto*

affords me shade. Blessed art thou who canst bless others

*porgere ombra. Beata**beare*

with thy looks or words. This shall be for us a glorious day;

either victory or death. Either thy followers do not help

seguaci

thee, or thou dost not know how to avail thyself of their

prevalere

2 1

assistance. From the time the sun rises, till night, the ene-

spuntare

my do nothing but bombard the town. You have undoubt-

bombardare

edly committed a grievous fault; nevertheless I do forgive
enorme fallo;

you. You are indebted to me for the honours and riches you
dovere =

possess, nevertheless you dared (to make attempts) upon my
insidiare = *mi*

life. Do then for me what I do willingly for you. To
la

whom he answered nothing else but, « I have deserved it. »

Change thy mind, and come with me, for (I never felt
Mutare = *consiglio*, *mai ben non*

happy) since thou didst abandon me. Buffalmacco asked
sentii

how that stone (was called); and Calandrino answered:
avesse nome; —

« What have we to do with the name, since we know the
a del sapere

property of it?» Since you will have it so, let it be so. From
virtù = = =

the moment he saw me he kept his eyes constantly upon
tenere gli occhi addosso =
 me. Since you wish that I should remain, I shall keep you
 (dat.)

company. Riches do not only palliate the imperfections of
coprire difetto

the body, but also those of the soul. And having turned
 = *rivolgere*

towards Panfilo, she bid him (in a pleasant manner) begin
 ——— *dire piacevolmente che* (subj.)

with one of his stories. For which reason Panfilo began
novella. ———

thus. All your words are examined and weighed; therefore
detto pesare;

I desire you to be cautious. And those things which do
pregare

not show their defects at first are more dangerous, for we cannot guard ourselves against them; as we see in a traitor.

prender guardia di traditore.

Why do you wish to tire us? Be quiet. Neither
annoja, or tediare zitto.

nor the fleets that are threatening us by sea, nor the army
per

which has already violated our soil, will make us yield
territorio, piegare

to the yoke. I neither esteem the father of that family
il collo al giogo.

nor his sons. I neither have money nor friends. He answered: « Sir, cranes have but one thigh and one leg.

gru coscia gamba.

Currade, then perplexed, said: « How! they have but one
Currado, turbato,

thigh and one leg? No sooner had he cut down the plant,
abbattere cesto,

than the cause of the death of the two unfortunate lovers was
misero amante

known.

apparve.

LESSON XXXV.

He (was not hurt at all by his fall), though he fell
non si fece alcun male nella caduta,

² from a place somewhat ¹high. Though he was hungry he
= = *alto.*

ward you if you give me (any thing to) drink. I do not
da

know whether I am allowed to do it. I do not know whe-
 ther you think it proper to stay an hour longer. Pro-
 (dat.) *parere* = *convenevole* *altro*.

vided you give me a hint, I shall go away. I shall
fare cenno = *via*.

know how to mix this medicine, provided you can keep
sapere = *comporre*

secret what you will see. Tell him, that whenever he
 (dat.)

likes to go out, the coach is ready. If you wish, I am ready
piacere *pronto*

to walk all the way. You have for a long time
fare a piedi strada = =

pressed me to put an end to my expenses: I am
stimolare che (subj.) = *spendere*: (sing.)

ready to do it provided you obtain a favour for me. If
presto di *impetrare grazia* = *Ove*

you are kind enough to honour me with your
volere, or compiacersi = *onorare di*

presence, I will invite all your friends. If it should hap-
egli *avve-*

pen that I escape, I will give you proofs of my attachment
nire *attaccamento*

to the sovereign. After they had given something to drink to
 the traveller, who was almost choaked with thirst, they de-
viaggiatore, morire di sete, pre-

sired him to stay there the whole night and the following day.
gare

These petitions will be presented as soon as the governor is arrived. Tell them I shall be there as soon as I can. He was beheaded as soon as the first sound of the bell was heard. No sooner had she said these words to me, than I set out on my journey without taking leave of any body.

*decapitare**colpo* = *campana*(inf.) *congedo da*

Draw the light a little nearer, and stay here until I have bridled my horse. Leave the water in the coffee-pot until it boils.

² ³¹ ⁴*Fare**più qua,**caffettiera*

=

LESSON XXXVI.

That interesting young man, who surprised us by his knowledge, fell yesterday from his horse and died immediately. Oh, poor father! O sad thing! I shall no longer pay

*interessante**dottrina.**disgrazia!*

attention to what you write or say. What! you will not listen to me any more? Well, (go your own way); I shall

fate a modo vostro;

not pity you. Ha, rogue, have I caught thee? I

*compiangere**briccone,**corre*

=

shall get a room prepared for thee at Newgate. Ho; ho, you have won at the lottery twelve thousand pounds! I

² ⁴ ³ ¹
*farò**allestire (inf.)=**lotto*

congratulate you on it. Alas! I have lost all I possessed,
and I see nothing but misery before me. Oh blessed be

benedetto =

that day in which he was born! She was pleased to sing

compiacersi (pret.)

to us various songs, and the company, full of mirth, cried out
at the end of each of them: « Bravo! bravo! » The per-

= =

at-

formers of this tragedy distinguished themselves in the last
tori

distinguere

act, and heard at various times the spectators crying out:

atto, = *volta* *spettatore* (inf.)

« Bravo! » « Bravo, judge, you are the true interpreter of

giudice, *interprete*

laws! » exclaimed the king in hearing him pronounce a very
legge! »

just sentence. Cheer up, my dear friends. Do not let us

lasciare

be (beat down) by adversity. Courage, come along. Be

= *abbattere*

=

firm, companions, let us attack the enemy. Woe to him who
enriches himself by fraud! Woe to you if you do not come!

colla

Woe to me if I should dare to contradict his orders! Alas!

ardire di

how unfortunate I am! Oh, happy me! Hush, madam,
your father is ill. Ah! do assist us. O you sleepers,

infermo.

dormiglione,

awake, and open the door for him. I wish I could con-
svegliarsi

= (dat.)

vin-

quer that enemy, as I have conquered this cruel wild beast!

cere

fiera!

Well! did I not tell you the day before yesterday that this disagreeable persons would sow dissensions in this family?

noioso

mettere la discordia

Alas! to what I see myself reduced! To beg a piece of

ridotto! Mendicare tozzo

bread! Oh! let me die. Quiet, gentlemen, they are asleep.

si muoja.

Be quiet, my child, do not cry, be quiet. Gently, sir,

figliuolo,

stare zittino.

do not get angry.

andare in collera.

LESSON XXXVII.

I am always thirsty after (my meals). Give something to

il pasto.

eat to those who are hungry, and think not of us who are sa-

sa-

tiated. If you are cold, put on your cloak. Are you not

tollo.

= vi il

ashamed to let us know your failings? (How old is he)!

far sapere debolezza? Quanti anni ha?

How olde may he be? He is twenty years old. He was

potere

sixty years old when he died. You have convinced me: I

acknowledge I am wrong, and shall tell my superiors that

=(inf.)

superiore

you are right to act differently. I would not neglect my

operare

duty: he is angry with me, and would avenge himself with-

vendicare

out any reluctance. I am not in a humour to-day to make verses: I must apply myself to something else. Never take amiss what I tell you: I do not wish to hurt you. What is

nuocere

the matter with you? Why do you sigh? Has any misfortune befallen you? What is the matter with that gentleman?

accadere

What is the matter in this house? Every thing inspires here melancholy and mourning. It was cold yesterday, and it is

duolo.

warm to-day. We shall go this day week (into the country), if it be fine weather. Your neighbour come and told me it

would be better to put off our riding till Saturday, since it

differire cavalcata

is bad weather to-day. How is the weather? (There is no

Che fa = Non si può

going out. My hands are cold, give me a pair of gloves.

uscire. quanto.

He was once in good circumstances, and is at present reduced to great distress. Take an example from him, ye spend-

=

thrifts. What will become of that family? What will become

of me? And having thanked him for the portmanteau he had

=

lent me, he answered: "Sir, you are welcome to it;

prestare

EXERCISES.

69

Take it, (whenever you like). He made me repent my
servirsi ne, a vostro piacere.

foolish boldness. He is now applying himself to Arabic.
folle ardire. Arabo.

Rely upon me (on any occasion). If thou dost not
in qualunque occorrenza.

mind, he will play thee a trick. He keeps company with
l'adare,

some persons whom I do not like. He converses with learned
lette-

men by day, and with gamesters by night. Fancy that I am
ruto giocatori

always by you. He is so jealous, that he does not allow his
geloso,

wife to look out of the window. It is too intricate a business;
scabroso

I will never take the care of it upon myself. The Mincio
empties itself into the Po, and this river falls not far from

Fe rara in the sea. He has plenty of money, and turns it to
molto =

a good use. You make my mouth water in speaking of those
savoury dishes. I will not say a word; I will pretend as if I
did not perceive it. If I have an opportunity to receive the
accorgerai

money which is due to me, I shall be your partner, and we
socio,

shall go halves. Leave neither doors nor windows open
when it blows. I will not have you along with me; I de-
volere = = dis-

spise you: do your worst. I knocked two or three times;
prezzare *bussare*

but no one came upon the stairs. Let (him who) likes to
 = *chi volere*
 box, come and get ready. He who makes attempts upon a
prepararsi.

friend's life should be expelled from the (society of men).
consorzio umano.

You pretend as if you would love me, and are notwithstanding laying snares on my honour. This is the third time
che

you disappointed me. I should be wanting in the respect I
 owe you, if, etc. Stay on guard in my place, because I do
di guardia *vece*

not wish to miss my lesson. We shall not surrender, but
 = *arrendersi,*
 when we want provisions. My strength begins to fail me,
viveri.

and warns me that I am getting old Be prudent and
avvertire *invecchiare.* *accorto*
 brave. Know that your honour is at stake. Friends, let
valeroso. Sapere

us defend ourselves; our life is at stake. I went and called
 him as you told me. He is one of those who seek for a
 drunken quarrel. (Let us make an end of it), sir; I yield.

Finiamola,

He laid hold of a stick, and began to strike me on the
bastone,

head. I do not lay the blame on you, nor do I say he is
 right. I have not yet been at the president's to wish him a
presidente

happy new year. Gentlemen, I wish you a good morning.

Let us go and wish Mr. S. a good journey. He does not trouble himself about any thing; he only thinks of living a *curare di nulla;* (inf.) merry life. This wine gets pale as it grows old. The *dare nel pallido* enemy's fleet is within gun-shot.
flotta

LESSON XXXVIII.

The trees I ingrafted eight days ago are thriving. At what o'clock must they depart? At five. Then I shall lay the cloth directly. The dinner is ready: let us sit down to table. He *adesso.* *in ordine:*

has set up a shop, and gets (his livelihood). Yo have *guadagnare da vivere.*

not cared for honours nor for riches, and only think of her that has stolen your heart. But I will force you to do what is right. The manager was a loser last year. Put my things *impresario*

in order. He has always been a credible man; and what he wrote is so firmly believed, that a great many would swear to it. Through that man's fault we have been two days without water. It is your duty to find a remedy for it. Gentlemen, I am starving with hunger; do assist me for charity's sake.

per carità = =

When I was very thirsty, no one gave me drink; when I was very sleepy, nobody offered me a bed: and am I to *da dormire: avere*

pity you whom neither my sleepiness, nor my thirst, *compiangere sonno*

nor my hunger moved to compassion? Out of this place,

Via di qua,

you wretches. The physicians have finally, after various
= *sciagurato.* *medico*

consultations, discovered the cause of his illness, and said
consulto,

that he has the liver-complaint. He sees that he (Rinaldo) is
— — —
very attentive to what Guelfo says, and hears from him the

— — —
apprendere

illustrious deeds of his ancestors. As the dogs that have
chiaro esempio

lost the trace of a wild beast, come back melancholy and
mesto

panting after a long and painful chase, etc. By having
anelante *faticoso caccia,* *Per* (inf.)

paid attention to thy prattling, I have lost the sight of
attendere *chiacchiera,* (plu.)

my master. She laughed at it in such a manner, that I perceived she had taken me for another. We cast our anchor near the light-house. O my brethren, examine your con-
lanterna. *fratello,*

sciences, and tell me afterwards whether you are innocent. I do not take as an honour, an action at which I may blush
atto

afterwards. He was put out of countenance. He takes after his father, and let that be enough for you. I think you have
bastare = (dat.)

drunk too much, for in your conversation you do nothing
di soverchio,

but digress from the matter. Give me a glass of iced water,
2 1
nevata

I am almost choaked with thirst. Do you think I am foolish?
 I am aware that you wish to sift me. I wish your tutor
accorgersi *ajo*
 was here to keep you within bounds. Two hundred soldiers
 are enough to keep the inhabitants in awe. Thou art a traitor,
 and despised as such. We shall side with you, pro-
come tale.

vided you remunerate us. He lives nobly, and keeps an open
 table. No sooner had I incurred the displeasure of the
subito che *venire in disgrazia*
 king, than all those, who were about me and always praised

=

my conduct, cut me. You will learn very little from that
 man who conceals things every body knows. Who stood
 godfather to you? I shall entreat Baron S., with whom I am
 acquainted, to interest himself for you. He keeps twelve
 boarders, and teaches them Italian and French. I have a
insegnare

great mind to thrash you. I was ready to go away.
dare delle busse(dat.) *partirsi*

Having left Florence, they did not stop until they reached
 = *uscito di*

England. This stewed veal tastes smoky. Wines that
stufato di vitella

taste sweet do not agree with me. Let us play a game.
confarsi *fare partita.*

At what game? We shall play at chess? Can you play on
giuoco? *giocare*

2

any instrument? I play on the flute. Did you hear the drum
istrumento? *flauto.*

1

beat? When she smiles at me, I fancy I am quite

sorridere (dat.) *parere* = *di* (inf.)

happy. In some parts of your sermon of to-day, you have

predica

touched us to the quick. They all came and shook hands

with me, except the major. It is your turn to deal.

tranne maggiore.

fare, or dare le

Drive on, coachman; we must arrive before the others.

carte.

He takes every thing upon trust, and at the end of each month his house is full of bakers, fishmongers, butchers, and

fornaro, pescivendolo, beccaro,

others of (the same sort). He began to bear me a grudge

= *simil fatta.*

from the day you expressed your wish to send me to

manifestare

France. I should like to hire a house near yours. Why are you angry with us? Be angry with yourself. If your coffer

scrigno

be full of money, I shall borrow from you two thousand pounds. I long to go away. I long to tell him this busi-

andarsene.

fac-

ness. I acquaint you that I have just arrived at this island

cenda. fare sapere

sound and safe. If I arrive safely, and get a great

ritrarre =

profit by my goods, I shall send you to the University of

guadagnoda merce,

Università

Padua. It is not their duty to tell him what he has to do:

Padova.

it is my business to direct him. He lives upon his estate,

dirigere

and I on mine. He has no need of me, nor I of him. (Most

La mag-
of those people) live from hand to mouth. I wish he
gior parte di coloro

would arrive, and not make us wait so long. I wish I could
tanto.

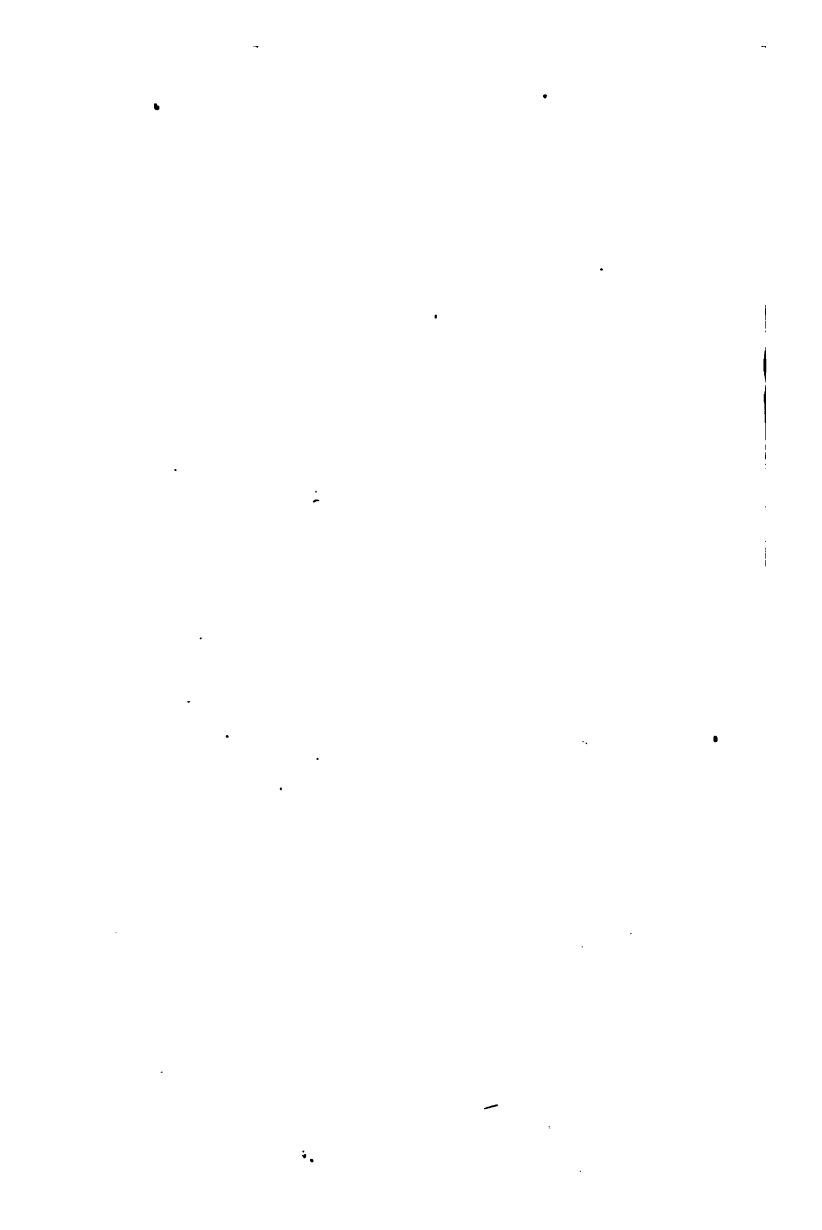
be useful to you, I would do it with pleasure. We do not
think our friend hates you: we can tell you, on the contrary,
that he is inclined to use his interest in your favour. If
disposto servirsi credito

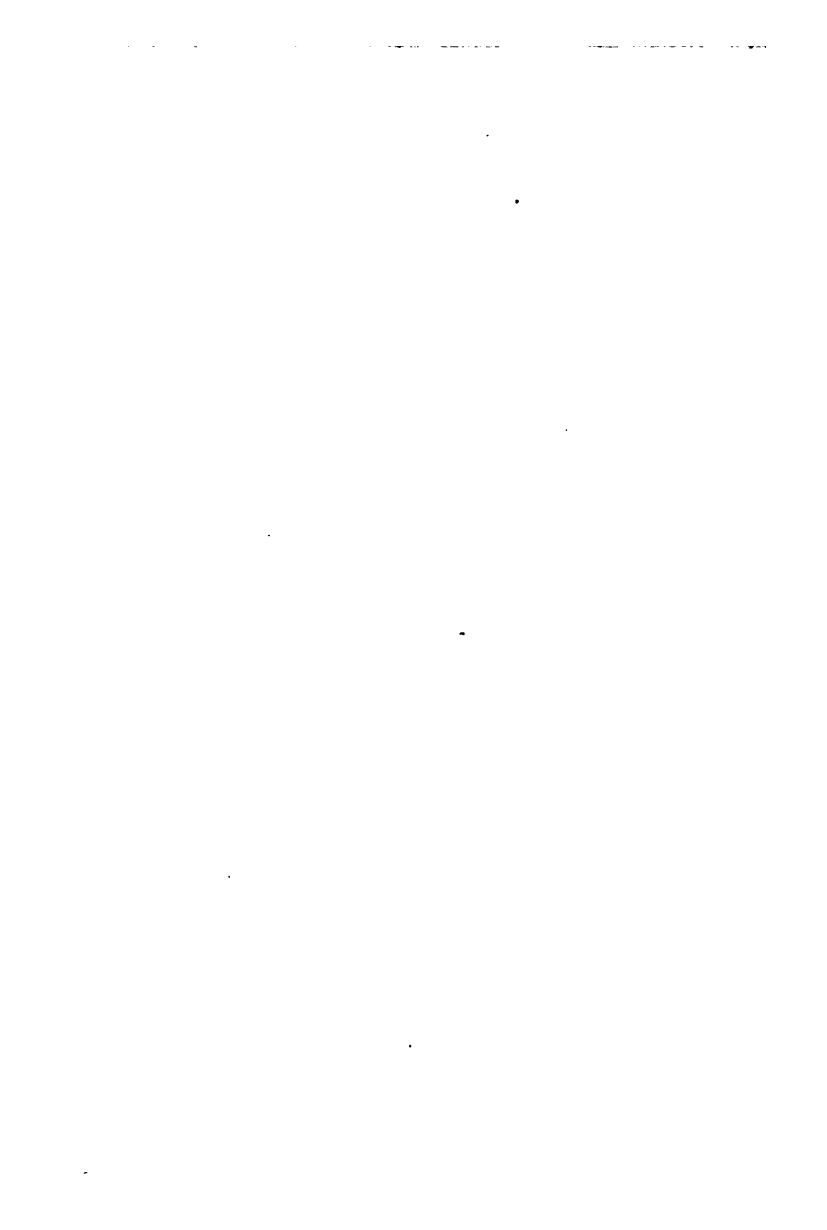
you wish us well, show it to us; I mean that you should
voler dire

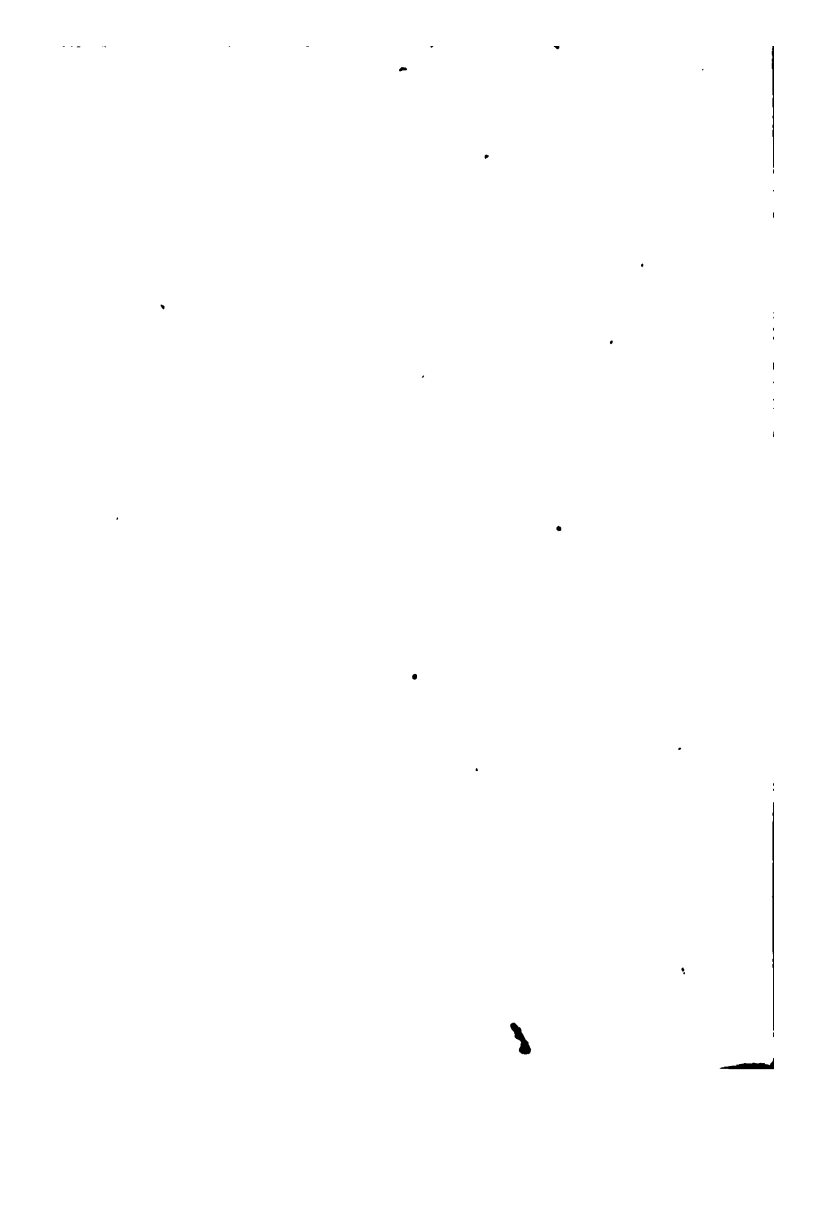
stay a month with us. Take the umbrella, I think it looks
stare ombrello,

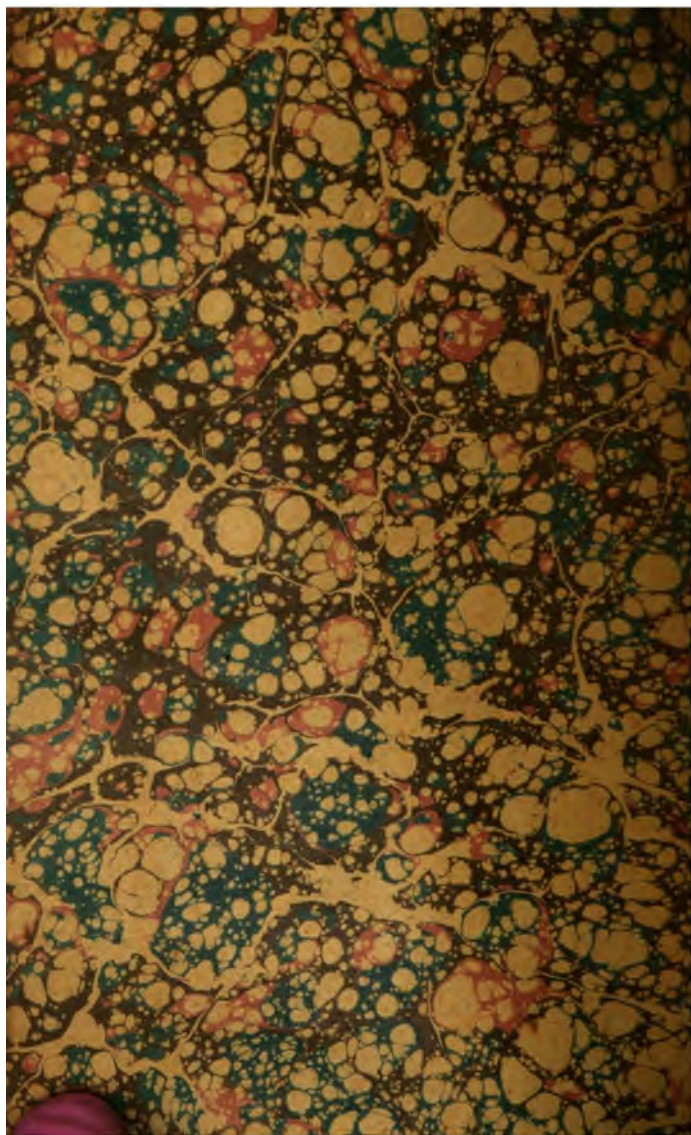
as if it was going to rain. Do it, if it be convenient to you.
I had no opportunity of speaking to her. What is that to
you, if I drink? What is that to you, if he comes here?

THE END.









~~MAY 22 1976~~

312
MAY 21 1976

